



# FOCUS TWO

Focus is a rich, varied, carefully levelled course for upper secondary students. Specially designed to motivate older teens, it helps them to track their level and achieve the exam results they need. With its unique blended learning package, Focus is the flexible course that gets results.

## MOTIVATION

- Language is brought to life through grammar animations, interactive videos and culturally relevant clips
- Learning is tracked via personalised reporting in the online Gradebook
- Development of language and exam strategies are carefully levelled to the GSE

## MEMORY

- The unique approach to vocabulary acquisition via the Word Store helps new words stick in students' memories
- Language acquisition is driven by careful recycling of vocabulary and grammar
- Exam skills are reinforced by Cambridge and PTE General practice booklets

## MEANING

- English is made relevant to students' own lives by frequent personalisation
- Meaningful practice is provided by the extensive selection of editable worksheets, assessment programme and tests

### FOR STUDENTS



Students' Book



Workbook



MyEnglishLab

### FOR TEACHERS



Teacher's Book



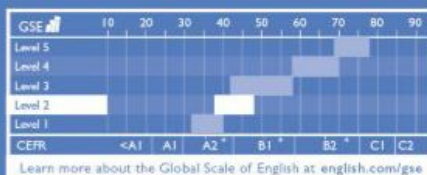
MultiROM



Class CDs



ActiveTeach



[www.english.com/focus](http://www.english.com/focus)



Progress accurately measures student progress in English, highlighting strengths and weaknesses to inform teaching.



FOCUS 2

STUDENTS' BOOK

SUE KAY | VAUGHAN JONES | DANIEL BRAYSHAW | BARTOSZ MICHAŁOWSKI

PEARSON

# FOCUS

GLOBAL SCALE  
of English

## STUDENTS' BOOK

SUE KAY | VAUGHAN JONES | DANIEL BRAYSHAW | BARTOSZ MICHAŁOWSKI

2

ALWAYS LEARNING

PEARSON

DIGITAL COPY

FOCUS

DIGITAL

COPY



	0.1 p. 4 Grammar: Present Simple and Present Continuous Vocabulary: Family	0.2 p. 5 Grammar: Past Simple affirmative Vocabulary: Music	0.3 p. 6 Grammar: Past Simple negative and questions Vocabulary: Verbs
<b>1</b> Personality	<b>Vocabulary</b> pp. 12–13 Personality adjectives; Adjective antonyms; Negative prefixes; Adjective + preposition Reading: Teenage dreams and ambitions	<b>Grammar</b> p. 14 Present tenses – question forms; Subject and object questions; wh- questions ending with prepositions	<b>Listening</b> p. 15 Voluntary work Exam Focus: Gap-fill Pronunciation: Word stress (personality adjectives) Vocabulary: Negative prefixes
<b>2</b> Invention	pp. 24–25 Inventions; Technology; Compound nouns – computers; Collocations; Phrasal verbs Listening: Digital firsts	p. 26 Past Continuous and Past Simple	p. 27 Becoming a scientist Exam Focus: Multiple choice Pronunciation: Word stress (science and scientists) Vocabulary: Word families
<b>3</b> The arts	pp. 36–37 Art and media; Types of books and writers; Films; Music; 'A part of a whole' Reading: How writers write	p. 38 Present Perfect with just, already, (not) yet and Past Simple	p. 39 A street artist Exam Focus: Multiple choice Pronunciation: Word stress (countries and nationalities) Vocabulary: Art and music
<b>4</b> Living	pp. 48–49 Rooms and furniture; Describing houses; Things inside and outside a house; Phrases with make and do Reading: The Hobbit House	p. 50 Present Perfect with for and since	p. 51 Teenagers' rooms Exam Focus: Multiple choice Pronunciation: Long vowel sounds Vocabulary: Adjective order
<b>5</b> School	pp. 60–61 School subjects; Phrasal verbs; Education; Phrases with get Reading: Top marks Listening: An interview with a Finnish student	p. 62 First Conditional	p. 63 Exams and getting into university Exam Focus: True/False Pronunciation: Numbers Vocabulary: More phrases with get
<b>6</b> Working life	pp. 72–73 Jobs; work + prepositions; Collocations – terms and conditions; Confusing words – job vs work Listening and reading: What makes you happy in your job?	p. 74 Second Conditional	p. 75 Becoming an airline pilot Exam Focus: Multiple choice Pronunciation: Word stress (jobs) Vocabulary: Compound nouns
<b>7</b> Shopping	pp. 84–85 Shops and services; Partitives; Shopping; Places in a town Reading: Mall of America Listening: Advantages and disadvantages of shopping malls	p. 86 The Passive	p. 87 Buying presents Exam Focus: True/False Pronunciation: Silent letters Vocabulary: Collocations
<b>8</b> Society	pp. 96–97 Politics; Crime and criminals; The justice system; People involved in a crime case; Society Reading: UK crime trends	p. 98 Past Perfect	p. 99 Lie-spotting Exam Focus: Multiple choice Pronunciation: Diphthongs Vocabulary: Antonyms
Focus review pp. 22–23 Unit 1 pp. 34–35 Unit 2 pp. 46–47 Unit 3 pp. 58–59 Unit 4 pp. 70–71 Unit 5 pp. 82–83 Unit 6			
pp. 108–119 Grammar Focus pp. 120–127 Word list			
WORD STORE pp. 2–17 Word practice and word stores 1–8 pp. 18–19 Prepositions p. 20 Phrasal verbs			

0.4 p. 7 Grammar: Present Perfect Vocabulary: Leisure activities	0.5 p. 8 Grammar: be going to Vocabulary: Collocations	0.6 p. 9 Grammar: will for predictions Vocabulary: Travel	0.7 p. 10 Grammar: must, have to and should Vocabulary: Sport	0.8 p. 11 Grammar: Countable and uncountable nouns; Articles Vocabulary: Food
Reading	Grammar	Speaking	Writing	
pp. 16–17 Teenage stereotypes Vocabulary: Word families	p. 18 Verb + -ing or verb + to-infinitive Vocabulary: clothes	p. 19 Showing interest	pp. 20–21 A personal email/letter	
pp. 28–29 Space travel Exam Focus: Multiple choice Vocabulary: Collocations	p. 30 used to	p. 31 Telling a story Vocabulary: Linkers	pp. 32–33 An informal email/letter	
pp. 40–41 Film descriptions and reviews Exam Focus: Matching Vocabulary: Adjectives with positive or negative meanings	p. 42 Comparative and superlative adjectives, too and enough	p. 43 Describing a photo	pp. 44–45 An informal email/letter	
pp. 52–53 Descriptions of different places Exam Focus: Matching Vocabulary: Places in the city and in the country	p. 54 Present Continuous, be going to and will	p. 55 Making suggestions	pp. 56–57 A story	
pp. 64–65 Charity schools Exam Focus: True/False Vocabulary: Word families	p. 66 Relative clauses	p. 67 Giving an opinion; Agreeing and disagreeing	pp. 68–69 An email/A letter of enquiry Grammar: Indirect questions	
pp. 76–77 A man who lived without money Exam Focus: Multiple choice Vocabulary: Phrasal verbs	p. 78 Modal verbs for obligation and permission	p. 79 Asking for and giving advice	pp. 80–81 An email/A letter of application	
p. 88–89 How colours are used in advertising Exam Focus: Multiple choice Vocabulary: Word families	p. 90 Quantifiers	p. 91 Shopping and making complaints	pp. 92–93 An email/A letter of complaint	
pp. 100–101 The American Civil Rights Movement Exam Focus: True/False Vocabulary: Word families	p. 102 Reported Speech	p. 103 Expressing and justifying an opinion	pp. 104–105 A reader's comment	
pp. 94–95 Unit 7 pp. 106–107 Unit 8				
p. 21 Word building p. 22 Key to phonetic symbols p. 23 Irregular verbs				

## 0.1 Family

Grammar: Present Simple and Present Continuous  
Vocabulary: Family

### SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

- In pairs, list all the family members you can think of in sixty seconds. Then use them to describe yourselves.  
*I'm a son, I'm a nephew, I'm a ...*
- Tell your partner about three members of your family.  
*Mark is my uncle. He's my mum's brother. He lives ...*
- CD-1.2 MP3-2** Look at Vicky's family photos and guess how each person is related to Vicky. Then listen and check.  
*I think it is Vicky's mum.*

Chats Friends Vicky Photos Info

My family



1 Vicky View Download 08.32



2 View Download 08.35



3 View Download 08.37



4 View Download 08.40



5 View Download 08.42

Comment

+ Add photos

- 4 **CD-1.2 MP3-2** Complete the sentences about Vicky's family with the correct form of the verbs in brackets. Then listen again and check.

- Her mum \_\_\_\_\_ (write) for a magazine.
- Her dad \_\_\_\_\_ (work) in a bank.
- Her sisters \_\_\_\_\_ (argue) all the time.
- Her brother and family \_\_\_\_\_ (live) in Paris.
- Her grandpa often \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to Spain.

- 5 Use the phrases in the box to describe what Vicky's family are doing in the photos.

have a cup of tea laugh  
play football play golf sit in the park

- 1 Her mum is having a cup of tea.

- 6 Read REMEMBER THIS. Then complete the cartoon caption with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

### REMEMBER THIS

- You use the Present Simple to talk about facts, habits and routines.
- You use the Present Continuous to talk about actions in progress.



Grammar Focus page 108

- 7 Write true sentences from the prompts. Use the Present Simple or Present Continuous and an affirmative or negative form.

- I / live / near the school.  
*I don't live near the school.*
- we / have / a family pet
- I / read / a good book at the moment
- my parents / speak / English
- I / wear / my favourite shoes today
- my best friend / like / shopping
- I / play / the guitar
- it / rain

- 8 In pairs, take turns to ask and answer questions using the prompts in Exercise 7.

A: Do you live near the school?  
B: No, I don't.

## 0.2 How we met

Grammar: Past Simple affirmative  
Vocabulary: Music

### SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

- 1 **CD-1.3 MP3-3** Listen and tick the six music styles you hear.

folk ☐ heavy metal ☐ hip-hop ☐ house ☐ jazz ☐  
pop ☐ punk ☐ reggae ☐ rock ☐ R & B ☐

- 2 List all the bands you can think of in sixty seconds. What music style are they? Then compare your 'Top 5' with a partner.

- 3 Read the text and answer the questions. Do you know how any of your favourite bands first met?

- Which bands appeared on The X Factor?
- Which band members grew up in the same neighbourhood?
- Which band members met at school?
- Which band got together at university?
- Which band did a record company create?

### HOW THEY MET

**CD-1.4 MP3-4**

Do you know how your favourite bands first got together?

Many of the most famous bands were friends at school or college. International superstars U2 met in secondary school. When he was fourteen, Larry, the drummer, planned to start a band, so he put an ad on the school notice board. The other members of U2 answered it and they are still together forty years later!

British band Coldplay met in their first week at university. Singer Chris Martin studied Latin and Greek and got a first class degree. The same year, Coldplay had a number one hit.

The Arctic Monkeys grew up together. Their families were neighbours and two of them went to the same primary school. When they were fifteen, they all received guitars for Christmas. They played music together in Alex Turner's garage and did their first gig when they were sixteen years old.

Some bands started in a different way. When record companies wanted new bands, they created them. The Spice Girls began in this way.

Several boy and girl bands became famous after appearing on a TV reality show: successful British bands JLS and One Direction both appeared on The X Factor.

- 4 Find the Past Simple form of these verbs in the text. Then answer the questions.

be - \_\_\_\_\_ do - \_\_\_\_\_ have - \_\_\_\_\_  
become - \_\_\_\_\_ get - \_\_\_\_\_ meet - \_\_\_\_\_  
begin - \_\_\_\_\_ grow up - \_\_\_\_\_ put - \_\_\_\_\_

- Are the verbs regular or irregular?
- How many Past Simple forms are there for be?
- How many Past Simple forms are there for all other verbs?



- 5 Complete the table with more examples of regular verbs from the text.

Spelling	Examples
add -ed	worked, ...
add -d	lived, ...
delete -y + add -ied	tried, ...
double the consonant	stopped, ...
+ add -ed	

- 6 **CD-1.5 MP3-5** Listen and repeat. Which verbs have an extra syllable in the Past Simple form?

asked needed started  
talked wanted lived

- 7 Read REMEMBER THIS. Then complete the cartoon caption with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

### REMEMBER THIS

- You use the Past Simple to talk about finished actions in the past. You often say when they happened.
- There is only one past form for every verb (except be).



Grammar Focus page 109

- 8 Complete the sentences with the Past Simple form of the verbs in brackets.

- I \_\_\_\_\_ (meet) my best friend three years ago.
- I \_\_\_\_\_ (buy) some music a few days ago.
- My dad \_\_\_\_\_ (cook) last Sunday.
- I \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to a great party last Saturday.
- I \_\_\_\_\_ (wear) my favourite jeans yesterday.
- I \_\_\_\_\_ (see) a good film two weeks ago.
- I \_\_\_\_\_ (be) very tired last night.
- I \_\_\_\_\_ (wake up) before 6 a.m.

- 9 Change the time expressions in *italics* in Exercise 8 to make the sentences true for you.

*I met my best friend five years ago.*

## 0.3 Mr Bean

Grammar: Past Simple negative and questions  
Vocabulary: Verbs

### SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

- 1 In pairs, try to note down a verb for each letter of the alphabet. How many can you think of in sixty seconds?

ask be can do

- 2 Complete the table with the Past Simple form of the verbs in Exercise 1. Do you have more regular or irregular verbs?

Regular verbs	Irregular verbs
ask - asked	be - was/were
	can - could
	do - did

- 3 CD-1.4 MP3-6 What do you know about Mr Bean? Choose what you think is true. Then listen and check.

- The film 'Mr Bean on Holiday' was / wasn't very successful.
- Mr Bean started / didn't start as a TV series.
- The person who plays Mr Bean studied / didn't study acting.
- Mr Bean was / wasn't the original name for the character.



Rowan Atkinson as Mr Bean

- 4 CD-1.6 MP3-6 Put the words in the correct order to form the interview questions. Then listen again and check.

- see/for the first time/did/Mr Bean/you/when?  
When did you see Mr Bean for the first time?
- it/like/you/did/why?  
Did you like Mr Bean?
- Mr Bean/begin/did/how?  
When did Mr Bean begin?
- the idea for Mr Bean/come from/did/where?  
Where did the idea for Mr Bean come from?
- Mr Bean/similar to/Rowan Atkinson/was?  
Was Mr Bean similar to Rowan Atkinson?
- study/acting/he/did?  
Did he study acting?

- 5 Read REMEMBER THIS. Then complete the cartoon captions.

### REMEMBER THIS

- For all verbs (except be) you form Past Simple negatives with **did not (didn't)** + infinitive.
- You form Past Simple questions with **did** + subject + infinitive.

1 \_\_\_\_\_ you enjoy primary school?  
No, we \_\_\_\_\_ But we liked the school uniform.



Grammar Focus page 109

- 6 Rewrite the sentences in the negative. Then tick the sentences that are true for you.

- Mr Bean was on TV when I was younger.  
Mr Bean wasn't on TV when I was younger.
- My friend told me a good joke this morning.
- I saw a really funny advert online yesterday.
- My parents gave me a funny DVD for Christmas.
- My grandad liked silent Charlie Chaplin films.
- I watched cartoons when I was younger.

- 7 Put the verbs in brackets in the correct Past Simple form to make the sentences true for you.

- I watched/didn't watch (watch) a funny film last week.
- I \_\_\_\_\_ (be) very busy yesterday.
- I \_\_\_\_\_ (have) eggs for breakfast this morning.
- I \_\_\_\_\_ (play) tennis last weekend.
- My mother and father \_\_\_\_\_ (meet) at university.
- I \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to primary school near here.
- My grandparents \_\_\_\_\_ (get) married in a church.
- My best friend and I \_\_\_\_\_ (grow up) together.

- 8 In pairs, ask and answer questions about the sentences in Exercise 7.

A: Did you watch a funny film last week?  
B: Yes, I did./No, I didn't.

## 0.4 Experiences

Grammar: Present Perfect  
Vocabulary: Leisure activities

### SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

- 1 In pairs, complete the table with all the different leisure activities you can think of in sixty seconds.

do	go	play
yoga	horse-riding	the guitar

- 2 Mark the leisure activities you do often ✓✓✓, sometimes ✓ and never X. Then compare with a partner.

- 3 Complete the questionnaire. Put ✓ for yes and X for no.

**How adventurous are you?**

Have you ever done any of these dangerous sports?

- ... been snowboarding? ☐
- ... been kite-surfing? ☐
- ... been horse-riding? ☐
- ... been rock climbing? ☐

Have you ever done any of these things alone?

- ... been to the cinema? ☐
- ... been camping? ☐
- ... been to a party? ☐
- ... eaten in a restaurant? ☐

Have you ever done any of these things in front of other people?

- ... sung a song? ☐
- ... played an instrument? ☐
- ... acted in a play or a film? ☐
- ... given a speech? ☐

- 4 In pairs, ask and answer the questions in the questionnaire. Who is more adventurous?

A: Have you ever been snowboarding?  
B: No, I haven't.

- 5 Read REMEMBER THIS. Then complete the cartoon caption with the correct question.

### REMEMBER THIS

You use the Present Perfect to talk about finished actions in time up to now. You never say when they happened.

Note: been is the past participle of go when you mean 'go and come back'.

horse-riding (you/ever/go)?  
No, I haven't. Help!



Grammar Focus page 109

- 6 Complete the sentences so they are true for you. Then compare with a partner.

- The most famous city I've ever been to is ...
- The fastest car I've ever been in is ...
- The most beautiful place I've ever been to is ...
- The tallest building I've ever been in is ...
- The most expensive shop I've ever been in is ...
- The best party I've ever been to is ...

- 7 How well do you know your partner? Write sentences that you think are true from the prompts. Use the Present Perfect.

- go to a rock concert  
My partner hasn't been to a rock concert.
- write a poem
- see a James Bond film
- go to London
- win a prize
- meet a famous person
- stay up all night
- lose a phone

- 8 In pairs, ask and answer questions to check your ideas in Exercise 7.

A: Have you ever been to a rock concert?  
B: Yes, I have.  
A: Oh, I was wrong.

## 0.5 Adventure

Grammar: *be going to*  
Vocabulary: Collocations

### SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

- 1 In pairs, make as many verb + noun collocations as you can in sixty seconds.

do + camping some cooking  
go + a fire a great time  
have + a haircut on holiday  
make + some homework  
a mistake a party  
a promise swimming  
the washing-up

go camping

- 2 In pairs, ask and answer questions about the last time your partner did the activities in Exercise 1.

A: When was the last time you went camping?

B: Two years ago.



Judy

Simon

- 3 CD-17 MP3-7 Judy and Simon are discussing a holiday they are going on. Listen and mark what they have decided to do. Write J (Judy) or S (Simon).

### The Forest Adventure Camp

#### ACTIVITIES

- ☐ rock climbing
- ☐ swimming
- ☐ yoga
- ☐ forest walks
- ☐ sailing
- ☐ guitar and singing

#### JOBS

- ☐ put up tents
- ☐ collect firewood
- ☐ make a fire
- ☐ do the cooking
- ☐ do the washing-up
- ☐ organise games

- 4 Put the words in the correct order to form questions. Then answer them.

- 1 is / Simon / rock climbing / to / going / try?
- 2 Judy / to / is / in the afternoon / going / what / do?
- 3 is / do / which jobs / going / Judy / to?
- 4 Simon / is / the washing-up / to / going / do?
- 5 sing / Simon and Judy / to / going / are?

- 5 What do they think is going to happen? Complete the cartoon captions with the correct form of *be going to* and the verbs in the box.

crash fall get lost rain



- 6 Read REMEMBER THIS. Then complete the cartoon captions with one word in each gap.

### REMEMBER THIS

You use *be going to* for:

- future intentions (when you have already decided to do something and you tell people about it).
- predictions based on what you can see or what you know.



Grammar Focus page 110

- 7 Complete the sentences so they are true for you. Use *I'm going to* or *I'm not going to*.

- 1 I'm going to walk home after school.
- 2 I'm not going to stay in this evening.
- 3 I'm going to get up before 7 a.m. tomorrow.
- 4 I'm going to buy a new laptop this weekend.
- 5 I'm going to have a haircut next week.
- 6 I'm going to be rich and famous one day!

- 8 In pairs, ask and answer questions about the sentences in Exercise 7.

A: Are you going to walk home after school?  
B: Yes, I am.

## 0.6 Travel

Grammar: *will* for predictions  
Vocabulary: Travel

### SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

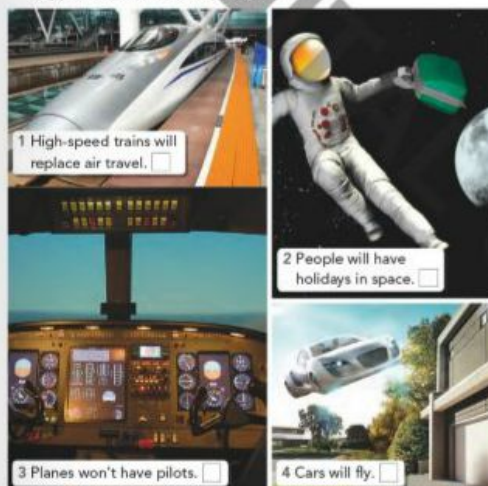
- 1 Work in pairs. How many nouns and verbs to do with transport can you think of in sixty seconds? Add them to the diagrams.



- 2 Has your partner ever travelled in the ways listed in Exercise 1? Ask and answer in pairs.

A: Have you ever ridden a motorbike?  
B: Yes, I have.

- 3 How will people travel in 2050? Discuss in pairs. Put ✓ for it will happen and X for it won't happen.



- 4 CD-18 MP3-8 Listen to an expert discussing the predictions in Exercise 3 and compare his opinions with yours.

- 5 CD-18 MP3-8 Listen again. Which two things won't happen in the expert's opinion? Why?

- 6 Read REMEMBER THIS. Then add *will* in the correct place in the sentence to complete the cartoon caption.

### REMEMBER THIS

- You use *will* for future predictions – things you think or guess about the future.
- Use *I don't think ... + will ...*  
NOT *I think ... + won't ...*

One day you travel to the moon.



Grammar Focus page 110

- 7 Complete the predictions about 2050 with *will* or *won't*. Then tick the predictions you agree with for your country.

- 1 There \_\_\_\_\_ (not be) any petrol cars.
- 2 People \_\_\_\_\_ (work) till they are seventy.
- 3 Pollution \_\_\_\_\_ (be) worse.
- 4 There \_\_\_\_\_ (be) more extreme weather.
- 5 Food \_\_\_\_\_ (not be) cheaper.
- 6 Everybody \_\_\_\_\_ (speak) English.
- 7 Robots \_\_\_\_\_ (not replace) teachers in school.
- 8 There \_\_\_\_\_ (be) a female president.

- 8 Make predictions about your partner. Use *I think/I don't think you will ...*

- 1 be famous  
I don't think you will be famous.
- 2 travel round the world
- 3 live and work in a foreign country
- 4 have five or more children
- 5 learn how to fly a plane
- 6 study English at university
- 7 win a sports prize one day
- 8 write a best-selling book

- 9 In pairs, read your predictions in Exercise 8. Does your partner agree?

A: I don't think you will be famous.  
B: I don't agree with you. I think I will be famous.

## 0.7 Sport

Grammar: *must*, *have to* and *should*  
Vocabulary: Sport

### SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

- In pairs, list all the sports you can think of in sixty seconds.
- Put the sports from Exercise 1 in the correct group. Some sports can go in more than one group.
  - team sports: football,
  - indoor sports: \_\_\_\_\_
  - sports that collocate with play: football,
  - expensive sports: \_\_\_\_\_
  - sports you have tried: football,
  - sports you don't like: \_\_\_\_\_

- Complete a sports teacher's sentences with *must* or *mustn't*. Which sport do you think he/she is teaching?
  - You \_\_\_\_\_ respect the other team.
  - You \_\_\_\_\_ accept the referee's decisions.
  - You \_\_\_\_\_ argue with the referee.
  - You \_\_\_\_\_ keep your eye on the ball.
  - You \_\_\_\_\_ criticise your own team mates.
  - You \_\_\_\_\_ get angry when you lose.

- CD 1.9 MP3-9 Listen to a gymnast and a triathlete talking about their diets. Answer the questions. Write G (gymnast) or T (triathlete).
  - Who has to train seven hours a day?
  - Who *mustn't* eat more than 1,500 calories a day?
  - Who has to eat six times a day?
  - Who *mustn't* eat after 5 p.m.?
  - Who has to eat a lot of carbohydrates (e.g. pasta)?
  - Who has to have protein (e.g. fish) for lunch?



- CD 1.9 MP3-9 Based on the interview in Exercise 4, complete the advice for a triathlete with *should* or *shouldn't*.
  - Before a race, a triathlete: \_\_\_\_\_
  - \_\_\_\_\_ drink lots of water.
  - \_\_\_\_\_ eat things like rice and pasta.
  - \_\_\_\_\_ eat lots of red meat.
  - \_\_\_\_\_ rest and sleep at least eight hours.
  - \_\_\_\_\_ drink coffee.

- Read REMEMBER THIS. Then complete the cartoon captions with *should* or *have to*.

### REMEMBER THIS

- You use *must* and *have to* to say, 'This is necessary.'
- You use *mustn't* to say, 'Don't do this.'
- You use *should* (or *shouldn't*) to say, 'This is (or isn't) a good idea.'

Remember, you <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ drink three litres of water a day.



Grammar Focus page 111

- Rewrite the sentences using *should*, *shouldn't*, *mustn't* or *have to*.
  - It is necessary for sumo wrestlers to be very heavy.  
Sumo wrestlers \_\_\_\_\_.
  - If you're a woman, don't enter the dohyo (or sumo ring).  
Women \_\_\_\_\_.
  - It's a good idea for a sumo wrestler to eat around 20,000 calories a day.  
Sumo wrestlers \_\_\_\_\_.
  - When you watch a sumo training session, don't speak.  
When you watch a sumo training session, you \_\_\_\_\_.
  - It is necessary for sumo wrestlers to throw salt into the ring at the beginning of a match.  
Sumo wrestlers \_\_\_\_\_.
  - It isn't a good idea for sumo wrestlers to show their feelings.  
Sumo wrestlers \_\_\_\_\_.

- Write three sentences about your favourite sport. Use *should/shouldn't*, *must/mustn't* and *have to*. Then compare with a partner.
 

Before you run, you *should* stretch.

## 0.8 Food

Grammar: Countable and uncountable nouns + Articles  
Vocabulary: Food

### SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

- In pairs, complete the table with all the different food you can see in photos A-D. You have sixty seconds.

Protein	Carbohydrates	Fruit and vegetables	Other
<u>meat</u>	<u>rice</u>	<u>banana</u>	<u>chocolate</u>

- In pairs, look at the photos and discuss the questions.
  - Which school lunch do you think is the healthiest?
  - Which school lunch is most similar to yours?
  - Which school lunch would you most like to eat?



- CD 1.10 MP3-10 Listen to four students describing the school lunches. Match photos A-D with countries 1-4.

1 Brazil ☐ 2 France ☐ 3 England ☐ 4 Australia ☐

- Look at the photos again. Find examples of three countable nouns and three uncountable nouns. Use your dictionary if necessary.
  - Countable nouns: a banana, \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_.
  - Uncountable nouns: rice, \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_.

- In pairs, ask and answer questions about food items in the photos. Use *Is/Are there any* ...?
 

A: Is there any rice in photo D?  
B: Yes, there is.

A: Are there any sandwiches in photo D?  
B: No, there aren't.

- CD 1.11 MP3-11 Complete the text with *a/an*, *the* or *Ø* (no article). Then listen and check.

My school day starts early. For breakfast I usually have <sup>1</sup> Ø bread, <sup>2</sup> Ø hot chocolate and <sup>3</sup> Ø banana. I love <sup>4</sup> Ø fruit, so I always put <sup>5</sup> Ø apple and <sup>6</sup> Ø orange in my school bag for later. We have <sup>7</sup> Ø dog and I have to take <sup>8</sup> Ø dog out before I go to school. There's <sup>9</sup> Ø school bus. I know I should walk to school, but <sup>10</sup> Ø bus stops right outside my house and I'm lazy! I have lunch at school. <sup>11</sup> Ø lunches are healthy and because <sup>12</sup> Ø pasta is my favourite food, I usually have that. I get home around five o'clock. Luckily, my mum's <sup>13</sup> Ø great cook, so we always eat well at home.

- Read REMEMBER THIS. Then complete the cartoon caption with *a/an*, *the* or *Ø* (no article).

### REMEMBER THIS

- You use *a* or *an* with singular countable nouns. Use *a/an* to talk about a thing or a person for the first time.
- You use *the* to talk about that thing or that person again. You also use *the* when there is only one of something.
- Don't use *a/an* or *the* to talk about things in general.

What have you got for lunch today?



I've got some sandwiches and <sup>1</sup> Ø apple. <sup>2</sup> Ø sandwiches look OK, but I don't want <sup>3</sup> Ø apple. I can't stand <sup>4</sup> Ø fruit!

Grammar Focus page 111

- Complete the sentences with *a/an*, *the* or *Ø* (no article).
  - Ø fast food is bad for you.
  - Ø Italian food is the best in Ø world!
  - Ø men cook better than Ø women.
  - I can't live without Ø chocolate.
  - It's wrong to eat Ø animals.

- In pairs, discuss the sentences in Exercise 8. Which ones do you agree with?
 

I agree with number 1.

# PERSONALITY

Wanting to be someone else is a waste of the person you are.

KURT COBAIN (1967–1994),  
AN AMERICAN MUSICIAN

## UNIT LANGUAGE AND SKILLS

### Vocabulary:

- Show what you know – personality adjectives
- adjective antonyms
- negative prefixes: un-, in-, im-, dis-
- adjective + preposition
- word families

### Grammar:

- present tenses – question forms
- subject and object questions
- wh- questions ending with prepositions
- verb + -ing or verb + to-infinitive

### Listening:

- an interview and a conversation about voluntary work

### Reading:

- a text on teenage stereotypes

### Speaking:

- showing interest

### Writing:

- a personal email/letter

## FOCUS EXTRA

- Grammar Focus page 112
- WORD STORE booklet pages 2–3
- Workbook pages 8–19 or MyEnglishLab
- MP3s – [www.english.com/focus](http://www.english.com/focus)

## 1.1 Vocabulary

Personality adjectives • Adjective + preposition

I can describe people and talk about personal qualities.

### SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

1 Match adjectives 1–5 with their opposites a–e.

- |               |                                       |            |
|---------------|---------------------------------------|------------|
| 1 clever      | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> d | a boring   |
| 2 funny       | <input type="checkbox"/> b            | b negative |
| 3 interesting | <input type="checkbox"/> c            | c serious  |
| 4 kind        | <input type="checkbox"/> d            | d stupid   |
| 5 positive    | <input type="checkbox"/> e            | e unkind   |

2 In pairs, look at the photos and choose an adjective from Exercise 1 to describe each person.

3 **CD 1.12 MP3 12** Listen to Rani and check your answers to Exercise 2.

4 **CD 1.13 MP3 13** What do Sara, David and Rani want to be? Listen and complete the interview with the jobs they want to do.

5 Replace the adjectives in brackets with the adjectives in red in the interview.

- Surgeons are (not selfish). They are kind and helpful.  
*Surgeons are caring. They are kind and helpful.*
- Teenagers are (not cheerful). They are always in a bad mood.
- Business people are (not lazy). They put a lot of effort into their work.
- Journalists are (not modest). They think they are better than other people.
- Politicians are (not shy). They are confident and sociable.
- Farmers are (not crazy). They don't make silly decisions.

6 In pairs, discuss the questions.

- Do you know anybody like Rani, Sara or David?
- Which teenager is the most like/unlike you?
- What are your dreams and ambitions?

## TEENAGE DREAMS AND AMBITIONS

THEY'RE YOUNG, AMBITIOUS AND OPTIMISTIC.  
WE MEET THREE TEENAGERS AND ASK THEM  
ABOUT THEIR DREAMS AND AMBITIONS.

Interviewer: So Sara, what do you want to be?

Sara: I want to be a surgeon.

Interviewer: Are your parents involved in journalism?

Sara: No, not at all. In fact, journalists are pretty unpopular in my house. My father's interested in the news, but he isn't very keen on journalists. He thinks most of them are arrogant, dishonest and irresponsible.

Interviewer: David, why do you want to be a politician?

David: I'm really disappointed with our government. Young people have a lot to say, but politicians don't listen to them. They just think teenagers are lazy and miserable.

Interviewer: Why do you think you could be a politician?

David: I'm passionate about my country. I also have the right character. I'm not at all shy! In fact, I'm very outgoing and I'm good at public speaking. I'm only sixteen now, so I'm very inexperienced, but I'm serious about politics.

Interviewer: Rani, why do you want to be a surgeon?

Rani: Well, most surgeons in the UK are men and I think that's unfair and wrong in the twenty-first century. I think my generation is responsible for getting more women into important jobs.

Interviewer: What special qualities do you think you need to be a surgeon?

Rani: I think I need to be caring, sensible and very hard-working.



Real world • 7 April

Go to WORD STORE 1 page 3.

### WORD STORE 1A

7 **CD 1.14 MP3 14** Complete WORD STORE 1A with adjectives from Exercise 5. Then listen, check and repeat.

### WORD STORE 1B

8 **CD 1.15 MP3 15** Complete WORD STORE 1B. Write the opposites of the adjectives. You can find them in the interview. Then listen, check and repeat.

9 Complete the sentences with adjectives from WORD STORE 1B.

- Phil is an \_\_\_\_\_ skier. He goes to the mountains every year.
- Ted's an \_\_\_\_\_ guy. He never tells lies.
- I never ask Sarah to look after my pet. She is so \_\_\_\_\_.
- Mr Morgan is very \_\_\_\_\_. He treats all his students equally.
- Everybody likes Emma. She's really \_\_\_\_\_.
- I'm worried about going in a car with Cara because she's an \_\_\_\_\_ driver. She only passed her test recently.
- Paul's only sixteen, but he seems to be much older. He's so sensible and \_\_\_\_\_.

10 Can you change the names in Exercise 9 to describe people you know? Tell your partner.

### WORD STORE 1C

11 **CD 1.16 MP3 16** Look at the underlined words in the interview. Complete WORD STORE 1C with the correct preposition after the adjectives. Then listen, check and repeat.

12 Complete the questions with the correct prepositions.

- What sort of things are you interested \_\_\_\_\_?
- What after-school activities are you involved \_\_\_\_\_?
- What bands and singers are you keen \_\_\_\_\_?
- What sports or games are you good \_\_\_\_\_?
- What sort of things are you serious \_\_\_\_\_?
- What jobs at home are you responsible \_\_\_\_\_?
- Which marks in your last exams were you disappointed \_\_\_\_\_?
- What are you most passionate \_\_\_\_\_?

13 In pairs, ask and answer the questions in Exercise 12.

## 1.2 Grammar

### Present tenses – question forms

I can ask questions using present tense forms.

- In pairs, discuss who your role models are. Think about business people, sports stars, entertainers, and people you know.
- CD-1.17 MP3-17 Match questions 1–8 with answers a–h. Then listen and check.
  - Who inspires you?
  - What does he do?
  - Why do you admire him?
  - Does he give any money to charity?
  - Which charities does he give money to?
  - Have you ever met him?
  - What is he doing now?
  - Are you similar to him in any way?
  - No, never.
  - Different African charities, I think.
  - He's developing the first ever spaceport.
  - Richard Branson.
  - Yes, in some ways, I am.
  - He owns Virgin Atlantic.
  - Yes, he's very generous.
  - Because he's so energetic and successful.



Richard Branson

- Read the GRAMMAR FOCUS. Then complete the examples. Look at the questions in blue in Exercise 2.

### GRAMMAR FOCUS

#### Present tenses – question forms

To make questions, you put an auxiliary verb (do, be, have) before the subject of the main verb.

Present Simple: Why <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ you admire him?

Present Continuous: What <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ he doing now?

Present Perfect: <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ you ever met him?

When you ask about the subject, you don't use the Present Simple auxiliary do/does.

Who inspires you? NOT Who does inspire you?

Notice the position of the preposition in wh- questions: Which charities does he give money to?

- CD-1.18 MP3-18 Complete the questions for the interview about Aung San Suu Kyi. Then listen and check.

- Who \_\_\_\_\_? 'The person who inspires me is Aung San Suu Kyi.'
- Who \_\_\_\_\_? 'She's the Burmese Nobel Peace laureate.'
- Why \_\_\_\_\_? 'I admire her because she's 100 percent loyal to the people of her country.'
- What \_\_\_\_\_? 'She believes in non-violent action.'
- Have \_\_\_\_\_? 'No, I haven't seen her, but I've listened to her speaking.'
- What \_\_\_\_\_? 'She's working for peace, democracy and human rights.'



Aung San Suu Kyi

- Complete the questions about the subject (a) and about the object (b) of each sentence.

- a Viv enjoys \_\_\_\_\_ b swimming.  
a Who enjoys swimming? b What does Viv enjoy?
- a Neil has tried \_\_\_\_\_ b Japanese food.  
a Who \_\_\_\_\_? b What \_\_\_\_\_?
- a Rosie can speak \_\_\_\_\_ b three languages.  
a Who \_\_\_\_\_? b How many languages \_\_\_\_\_?
- a Dave has visited \_\_\_\_\_ b London.  
a Who \_\_\_\_\_? b Which capital city \_\_\_\_\_?
- a Tom is thinking about \_\_\_\_\_ b food.  
a Who \_\_\_\_\_? b What \_\_\_\_\_?

- Complete the sentences to make them true for you.

- I'm reading \_\_\_\_\_ at the moment.
- I spend most money on \_\_\_\_\_.
- It takes me \_\_\_\_\_ minutes to get to school.
- I go shopping for clothes \_\_\_\_\_ a year.
- I usually have lunch with \_\_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ inspires me.

- In pairs, ask and answer questions about the information in Exercise 6. Use different question words.

A: What are you reading at the moment?  
B: A book about Steve Jobs.

Grammar Focus page 112

## 1.3 Listening

### Gap-fill

I can identify specific detail in a monologue.

- In pairs, look at some of the places where people do voluntary work. Discuss why you would or wouldn't like to volunteer in each place.

in a developing country in a hospital in a library  
in a nursery in a prison  
in a soup kitchen for homeless people  
in an old person's home on a farm

- CD-1.19 MP3-19 Listen to two volunteers, Karen and Martin. Where do they do their voluntary work?



Martin

Karen

- Read questions 1–8 in Exercise 4. Match the underlined words and phrases with these words and phrases from the interview.

confident ☒ elderly ☐ impresses people ☐  
in a team ☐ more likely to do something ☐  
pigs and chickens ☐ Saturday and Sunday ☐  
two or three ☐

- CD-1.19 MP3-19 Listen again and answer the questions. Write K (Karen) or M (Martin).

Who:

- helps old people in the local area? ☐
- works with farm animals? ☐
- volunteers a few hours a week? ☐
- does volunteering work every weekend? ☐
- thinks that volunteers are more active than other people? ☐
- enjoys working with other people? ☐
- thinks that voluntary work makes you more sure of yourself? ☐
- thinks that doing voluntary work makes a good impression? ☐

- Imagine you could volunteer anywhere in the world. Which country would you choose? Why? Discuss in pairs.

- CD-1.20 MP3-20 Listen to Becky talking about international volunteering. Answer the questions.

- Who do you think Becky is talking to?
- Did Becky enjoy her volunteering work?
- What does she think are the benefits of volunteering?

### EXAM FOCUS Gap-fill

- CD-1.20 MP3-20 Listen again and complete the sentences with a word or short phrase.

- Becky did volunteering work in <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ last year.
- She was there for <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.
- Becky's job was to care for <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.
- Becky says that life can be very different in other countries and gives <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ as an example.
- She thinks that volunteers need to:
  - be fit and <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.
  - have good <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ skills.
  - be responsible.
- Becky recommends a volunteering agency which is called <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.
- Their phone number is <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.



- Are you a good candidate for international volunteer work? Why?/Why not? Discuss in pairs.

### PRONUNCIATION FOCUS

- CD-1.21 MP3-21 Listen and put the adjectives the correct group depending on the stress.

ambitious disappointed interested  
optimistic outgoing passionate  
responsible unpopular

A \*\*\* B \*\*\* C \*\*\* D \*\*\*

ambitious

- CD-1.22 MP3-22 Listen, check and repeat.

### WORD STORE 1D

- CD-1.23 MP3-23 Complete WORD STORE 1D. Write the adjectives to make pairs of opposites. Then listen, check and repeat.

## 1.4 Reading

### Gapped text

I can understand the structure of a text.

- 1 In pairs, look at the phrases in the box and decide whether they are things parents say about teenagers or things teenagers say about themselves.

able to get up early    bad-tempered  
generous    hard-working  
interested in the world    lazy  
loyal to their friends  
obsessed with their phones  
passionate about music    selfish  
uncommunicative    unhelpful

Parents say teenagers are ...

Teenagers say they are ...

- 2 Read the survey report and comments. Compare your ideas in Exercise 1 with the information you read.
- 3 Read the comments again. Choose from sentences A–F the one which fits each gap (1–5). There is one extra sentence.
- A Teenagers are definitely not lazy.  
B We don't have time to tidy our rooms.  
C Why are people so negative about teenagers?  
D I don't think I'm selfish.  
E I hate stereotypes.  
F The most important thing in my life is not my phone.
- 4 Read the comments again and write the names.
- Who thinks that:
- teenagers work really hard?
  - teenagers have lots of positive personal qualities?
  - teenagers are interested in other people and cultures?
  - teenagers are all different people?
  - friends are very important for teenagers?

ALL VIDEO FRIENDS APPLICATIONS PHOTOS WHITEBOARD BLOG



## What are teenagers really like?

CD 1-24 MP3-24

A recent survey shows that there are reasons why teenagers behave badly. The study suggests that teenagers need to sleep more and that is why sixty-five percent of parents say their teenagers are bad-tempered, uncommunicative and lazy. The report also shows that most teenagers are obsessed with their phones. They spend more time chatting online or playing computer games than doing homework. Most parents also say that their teenage children are selfish and unhelpful. Only a few of them help with housework at home.

### Your comments



Sarah

1 \_\_\_\_\_ Most of us are adorable, cheerful, very hard-working, interesting, brave, generous, loyal, helpful and very good cooks. Oh, and very modest!

5.54 p.m. 3 May



Janet

2 \_\_\_\_\_ It's my friends. We love each other. We don't argue or fight. We go to the park after school and we sit under a tree, eat ice cream and talk about guys. We like cooking and camping, not just texting and computer games. I don't have time to read much, but I play the guitar and sing. I'm not a bad-tempered monster – I (usually) apologise when I'm wrong and I like spending time with my grandparents.

7.18 p.m. 3 May



Andrew

3 \_\_\_\_\_ I get up at 6.30 a.m. every school day and I work hard all day. I never make plans to meet friends in the evening – that's when I do my homework. I think I need about nine and a half hours sleep a night, but I usually get only seven hours. So I'm sometimes a bit grumpy like my parents! 😞

10.13 a.m. 4 May



Ryan

4 \_\_\_\_\_ Not all teenagers are the same. Some of us are lazy, some of us aren't. Some of us like chatting online or playing computer games, but some of us prefer to play football or go for a run. OK, some of the things people say about teenagers are true. For example, music is really, really important to us, but we like different kinds of music. We are INDIVIDUALS!

3.22 p.m. 5 May



Mel

5 \_\_\_\_\_ I care about other people, I'm interested in the world. I want to travel and learn about other cultures. Then I want to get a job in a developing country. Most of my friends are like me! Where did you find your information? It's wrong!

6.20 p.m. 5 May

- 5 Match 1–5 with a–e to make questions. Then answer the questions.

- Who likes spending \_\_\_\_\_
  - Who wants to get \_\_\_\_\_
  - Who doesn't have \_\_\_\_\_
  - Who does \_\_\_\_\_
  - Who thinks some teenagers play \_\_\_\_\_
- a his homework in the evening?  
b football?  
c time with her grandparents?  
d a job in a developing country?  
e time to read much?

- 6 Find the opposites of these adjectives in Sarah's comment. Use a dictionary if necessary.

- arrogant ≠ modest
- cowardly ≠ \_\_\_\_\_
- disloyal ≠ \_\_\_\_\_
- dull ≠ \_\_\_\_\_
- grumpy ≠ \_\_\_\_\_
- mean ≠ \_\_\_\_\_

- 7 Complete the sentences with adjectives from Exercise 6.

- Teenagers are \_\_\_\_\_. They think they know everything.
- Teenagers are \_\_\_\_\_. They never get enough sleep and are always in a bad mood.
- Teenagers are \_\_\_\_\_ to their friends. They are always there for their friends.
- Teenagers are \_\_\_\_\_. They never give money to charity and always buy cheap presents.
- Teenagers are \_\_\_\_\_. They have lots of things to talk about.
- Teenagers are \_\_\_\_\_. They avoid dangerous situations and don't take risks.

- 8 In pairs, discuss the sentences in Exercise 7. Which ones do you agree/disagree with? Why?

### WORD STORE 1E

- 9 CD 1-25 MP3-25 Complete WORD STORE 1E. Add adjectives to the table. Mark the stress. Then listen, check and repeat.

## 1.5 Grammar

Verb + -ing form or verb + to-infinitive

I can use different verb patterns.

- 1 In pairs, match the words in the box with the clothes (a-f) in the pictures. Which of the clothes do you own?

hoodie ☐ jacket ☐ suit ☐  
sweatpants ☐ tie ☐ uniform ☐

- 2 Tick the sentence that best describes your opinion about clothes.

- 1 I want to look good at all times. ☐  
2 I enjoy wearing comfortable things. ☐  
3 I'm not interested in clothes. ☐

- 3 Read the GRAMMAR FOCUS. Then complete the examples using the verb patterns in blue in Exercise 2.

### GRAMMAR FOCUS

Verb + -ing form or verb + to-infinitive

• After some verbs and verb phrases you usually use the -ing form of a verb.

Examples: avoid, can't stand, consider, don't mind, enjoy, hate, like, love, miss, prefer, spend time

I enjoy <sup>1</sup> comfortable things.

• After some verbs and verb phrases you usually use the to-infinitive.

Examples: agree, can't afford, choose, decide, hope, manage, need, pretend, refuse, want, would like, would prefer  
I want <sup>2</sup> good at all times.

- 4 Complete the questionnaire with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.
- 5 Do the questionnaire. Then compare your answers with a partner.
- 6 Complete the sentences with to wear or wearing. Then tick the sentences that are true for you.
- 1 I can't stand \_\_\_\_\_ formal clothes like suits. ☐  
2 I don't mind \_\_\_\_\_ sweatpants at home. ☐  
3 I refuse \_\_\_\_\_ skinny jeans. They're too uncomfortable. ☐  
4 I hate \_\_\_\_\_ heavy winter coats. ☐  
5 I can't afford \_\_\_\_\_ designer clothes. They're too expensive. ☐  
6 I avoid \_\_\_\_\_ anything yellow or pink. ☐

- 7 Complete the sentences with information about you. Write five true sentences and one false one.

- 1 I love ... 4 I spend a lot of time ...  
2 I need ... 5 I sometimes pretend ...  
3 I've decided ... 6 I hope ...

- 8 In pairs, take turns to read your sentences from Exercise 7. Guess which of your partner's sentences is false.

Grammar Focus page 112

## WHAT IS YOUR ATTITUDE TO CLOTHES?

### 1 (SPEND)

- A I spend a lot of money on clothes.  
B I can't afford <sup>1</sup> to spend much money on clothes.  
C I prefer <sup>2</sup> my money on going out.

### 2 (GO)

- A I enjoy <sup>3</sup> shopping for clothes.  
B I don't mind <sup>4</sup> shopping for clothes.  
C I refuse <sup>5</sup> shopping for clothes.

### 3 (BUY)

- A I love <sup>6</sup> new clothes every season.  
B I only buy clothes when I need them.  
C I avoid <sup>7</sup> new clothes for as long as possible.

### 4 (WEAR)

- A I refuse <sup>8</sup> sweatpants.  
B I love <sup>9</sup> sweatpants at home for comfort.  
C I wear sweatpants all the time.

### 5 (GET)

- A I hope <sup>10</sup> a job where I can wear all my favourite clothes.  
B I want <sup>11</sup> a job where I can wear practical, comfortable clothes.  
C I'd like <sup>12</sup> a job where I can wear a uniform or a suit.

### 6 (THINK)

- A In the morning, I spend a lot of time <sup>13</sup> about my clothes.  
B In the morning, I don't spend much time <sup>14</sup> about my clothes.  
C I wear the same clothes every day.

## WHAT DOES IT MEAN?

### Mainly As I LOVE THEM

You enjoy <sup>15</sup> (think) about clothes (perhaps a bit too much). The way you look is important for your personal identity.

### Mainly Bs I NEED THEM

You don't mind <sup>16</sup> (think) about clothes, but they are not your priority. You prefer casual clothes because you need <sup>17</sup> (be) comfortable.

### Mainly Cs I HATE THEM

You hate <sup>18</sup> (think) about clothes! You choose <sup>19</sup> (spend) your time and money on other things. But don't forget: clothes can be fun.

## 1.6 Speaking

Showing interest

I can show interest in what somebody is saying and say whether we are similar.

- 1 In pairs, look at the activities in the box and discuss the questions.

- 1 How much free time do you spend on each activity?  
2 What other things do you do in your free time?  
3 How similar or different are you to your partner?

being online doing sport eating and drinking  
listening to music shopping socialising  
travelling watching TV

- 2 CD-1.26 MP3-26 Listen to two conversations and answer the questions.



Nick

Kate

- 1 What do Ed and Nick have in common?  
2 What do Rachel and Kate have in common?

- 3 CD-1.26 MP3-26 Listen again and complete the SPEAKING FOCUS with responses a-e.

- a Do you? Right ... d Really? I love it.  
b Really? That's cool! e Me too.  
c Is she?

### SPEAKING FOCUS

Statement	Saying you are similar
A: I love travelling and meeting new people.	B: 1
A: I don't really like rock or heavy metal.	B: Me neither.
Statement	Showing interest
A: I've got loads of friends and they want to meet you.	B: Really? That's cool!
A: I've just got one sister. She's a model.	B: 3
A: She's training to be a pilot.	B: Wow, that's interesting!
Statement	Saying you are different
A: I'm not very keen on tea.	B: 4
A: I don't like travelling.	B: Don't you? Oh, I do.
A: I play the violin.	B: 5

- 4 CD-1.27 MP3-27 Cross out the incorrect options. Then listen, check and repeat.

- 1 A: I've got thousands of songs on my iPod.  
B: Have you? / Cool! / Is it?  
2 A: I love Spanish and Italian food.  
B: Really? / Are you? / Do you?  
3 A: My parents have got an apartment in Paris.  
B: Wow, that's interesting! / Have they? / Are they?  
4 A: There are forty students in my class.  
B: Is it? / Are there? / Really?  
5 A: I can play the guitar.  
B: Cool! / Are you? / Can you?  
6 A: I'm passionate about politics.  
B: Really? / Do you? / Are you?

- 5 CD-1.28 MP3-28 Listen to six conversations and decide if the two speakers are similar or different. Write S or D.

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ 3 \_\_\_\_\_ 5 \_\_\_\_\_  
2 \_\_\_\_\_ 4 \_\_\_\_\_ 6 \_\_\_\_\_

- 6 Complete the table.

Statement	Say you are similar	Say you are different
a I'm worried about the world.	Me too.	Are you? <u>I'm not.</u>
b I'm not worried about the world.	2 _____	Aren't you? I am.
c I love reading poetry.	3 _____	4 _____? I don't.
d I don't like reading poetry.	Me neither.	Don't you? 5 _____.
e I've got lots of cousins.	6 _____	7 _____? I haven't.
f I haven't got any cousins.	Me neither.	Haven't you? 8 _____.

- 7 Complete the sentences to make them true for you.

- 1 I'm really into ...  
2 I haven't got ...  
3 I really like ...  
4 I'm very interested in ...  
5 I'm not very keen on ...  
6 I'm not very good at ...

- 8 In pairs, follow the instructions.

Student A: Choose one of your sentences from Exercise 7. Say it to Student B.  
Student B: Say if you are similar or different. Use the SPEAKING FOCUS to help you.

## 1.7 Writing

### A personal email/letter

*I can write to someone and tell them about myself.*

To: Jo  
Subject: C U soon!

Hi Jo,

I hope you're well. I'm really excited about coming to stay with you. I'm writing to tell you a bit more about myself.

As you know, I'm sixteen and I live in Venice. My brother and I go to the same school. I'm not crazy about studying, but it's OK – my favourite subject is Art. What about you? What's your favourite subject?

In my free time, I'm keen on sports and I'm pretty good at volleyball. I'm also passionate about music, especially American bands. At the moment I'm listening to Black Eyed Peas all the time.

At weekends, my friends and I love going to the cinema. What do you enjoy doing at weekends? Are you involved in any groups or clubs?

I can't wait to see you next month! I'm sure we'll have fun.

OK, time to finish. Write soon!

Bye 4 now,  
Carlo

1 In pairs, choose five qualities to describe the ideal exchange student.

- confident and independent
- friendly and outgoing
- generous
- good-looking
- good at sport
- honest
- interested in computers
- into the same music as me
- keen on the same hobbies as me
- sensible

2 Read the email from an exchange student and tick the topics in the box that he writes about.

family ☐ food ☐ hobbies ☐  
music ☐ school ☐ sport ☐

3 Write a sentence about each topic in Exercise 2 that is NOT mentioned to add to the email.

4 Put the sentences summarising the email in the correct order (1–5).

- a basic information about yourself
- b a greeting and information about why you are writing
- c say you are looking forward to seeing him/her
- d finish with a friendly goodbye
- e information about your likes/dislikes/hobbies, etc

5 Which of these phrases are used in the opening of the email and which are used in the closing part? Write O or C.

- |                            |                                 |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1 Time to finish.          | 6 Give my love/Say hello to ... |
| 2 I hope you're well.      | 7 I'm writing to ...            |
| 3 Write soon.              | 8 It was good to hear from you. |
| 4 I can't wait to see you. |                                 |
| 5 Bye for now.             |                                 |

6 Complete the WRITING FOCUS with the words in purple in email.

### WRITING FOCUS

#### A personal email/letter

- Start the email/letter with a friendly greeting.  
Dear Nick/<sup>1</sup> Hi Jo.
- Don't use full forms. Use contractions.  
you're (not you-are)/<sup>2</sup> (not I-am).
- Use useful phrases to give information about yourself.  
I'm interested in .../I'm good at .../I'm <sup>3</sup>
- Ask questions to show you want a reply.  
What do you enjoy doing at weekends?/What <sup>4</sup>?
- Finish the email/letter with a friendly goodbye.  
All the best/<sup>5</sup>

7 Does the person in the email sound like your ideal exchange student? What details would you change? Discuss in pairs.

8 Which of these people do you think would be a good (G) or not so good (NG) exchange student for you? Compare your answers with a partner.

- 1 I'm quite cheerful, but sometimes I get in a bad mood.
- 2 I don't like sports very much and I'm quite unfit.
- 3 I love school and studying and my favourite subjects are science and maths.
- 4 I'm obsessed with pop music.
- 5 I watch a lot of DVDs, especially horror films.
- 6 I'm crazy about shopping! I spend lots of money on clothes.
- 7 I love animals and I'm a volunteer at an animal centre.

## Writing task

You recently received an email from Jenny, an English teenager you are going to stay with in England. Read part of her email and write your reply to Jenny.

It's great to hear that you're going to come and stay with me and my family for two weeks. Please tell me something about yourself. What music and films do you like? What do you do in your free time?

A Write your email in about 100 words. Include these points.

- Thank Jenny for her email.
- Say how you feel about staying in England.
- Tell her about the sort of music and films you like.
- Write about some of the things you do in your free time.
- Ask about Jenny's interests.
- Say goodbye.

### Useful language

- Thanks for ...
- It was good to hear from you.
- I'm writing to tell you about/apologise for/thank you for ...
- How are you?/How are you doing?
- I must be going now.
- Looking forward to hearing from/meeting you.
- See you soon.

B Use the ideas in the WRITING FOCUS and the model to help you.

C Check.

- ✓ Have you answered all the questions in the task?
- ✓ Have you organised your email into paragraphs?
- ✓ Have you used information and phrases from the model, WRITING FOCUS and Useful language box?
- ✓ Have you checked your spelling and punctuation?

# FOCUS REVIEW 1

## VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

1 Complete the sentences with adjectives. The first letter of each adjective is given.

- Shona never smiles and is always depressed. She's a really **m** person.
- Tim always thinks he's right. He's so **a**.
- I'm **d** with my exam results. I didn't do well.
- My parents always give me and my brother the same things. They're very **f**.
- Has Marion always been so **i**? She always stays in bed until midday!
- Everyone knows Katie's name and everyone likes her. She's so **p**.

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in capitals.

- Tom has some health problems. He's quite **HEALTHY**.
- He saved a boy from the river and won a prize for **BRAVE**.
- Neil eats chips and hamburgers every day and never exercises. He's really **FIT**.
- She sends money to her family. I admire her **GENEROUS**.
- Jo told everyone my secrets. She's so **LOYAL**.
- MODEST** is not one of Zafira's qualities – she tells everybody that she's the best student in the class.

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

- swim** (you/ever/swim) in a river before?
- Who **enjoy** (enjoy) eating Italian food? I know a good restaurant.
- go** (Eve/usually/go) to bed very late?
- What music **listen** (your friends/like) listening to?
- What **read** (you/read) at the moment? Is it a novel?
- Who **take** (take) my book? It's not on the desk!

4 Use the prompts to write sentences.

- I / not mind / wear / my sister's old clothes / if they suit me
- they / miss / live / in the city
- you / ever / refuse / help / your friends?
- police officers / not always / need / wear a uniform
- I / always / like / dance
- you / spend / a long time / studying / when you get home from school?

## LANGUAGE IN USE

5 Choose the correct answer, A, B or C.

- Johann **art** at all. He has never been to an art gallery or an exhibition.  
A isn't involved in C isn't responsible for  
B isn't keen on
- with** the project at the moment?  
A Who helps Mary C Who is helping Mary  
B Who has helped Mary
- A: I don't like shopping for clothes.  
B: \_\_\_\_\_  
A Me too. B Me neither. C Not me.
- Sally is a vegetarian and she **to** wear clothes made of leather.  
A avoids B refuses C doesn't mind
- A: My older sister is a fashion designer.  
B: \_\_\_\_\_  
A Is she? B Have you? C Are there?

6 Read the text and choose the correct answer, A, B or C.

### WOULD YOU LIKE TO LOOK MORE STYLISH?

Most teenagers want to **be** good, but most of us can't afford **to** the latest fashions or designer clothes. But there is another way.

Have you ever **thought** buying clothes from a charity shop? You can find unique, stylish items at a much lower price than in high-street shops. Tasmin Chidzi, sixteen, is a big fan of charity shops. 'I enjoy **going** through all the rails of clothes. I always find something interesting and I prefer **to** unusual items that no one else has.' Tasmin doesn't mind that someone else has worn the clothes before her. 'I wash the clothes, of course. I'm passionate **about** recycling. If you're worried about the planet and climate change, reuse old clothes and visit your local charity shop.'

- |               |             |              |
|---------------|-------------|--------------|
| 1 A look      | B see       | C watch      |
| 2 A buy       | B to buy    | C buying     |
| 3 A preferred | B wanted    | C considered |
| 4 A search    | B to search | C searching  |
| 5 A putting   | B wearing   | C clothing   |
| 6 A about     | B with      | C to         |

## READING

7 Read the article. Are the statements true (T) or false (F)?

- You have to pay to join some of the websites. ☐
- There will be information about other websites in the future. ☐
- On the What's your hobby? website you can learn about new and interesting sports and hobbies. ☐
- People who have lots of personal problems can get help on the Serious teenage talk website. ☐
- The Exchange! website is only for teenagers who want to visit other countries. ☐
- Teenagers who want to learn a language can find information about schools near them where they can do this. ☐
- The Learn a language website is looking for good teachers. ☐

### International Student Magazine

Would you like to talk to people of your age in another country? Here are just a few of the free websites we can recommend. There's something for everyone here! Go online and make some friends. We'll give you more websites in the next month.

#### What's your hobby?

This is a website where you can meet people who have the same hobbies and interests as you. You type in the name of something you enjoy, for example, a sport, and then you can find other people in different countries who like the same thing. You can share information about things you do and give advice to each other. Who knows – one day perhaps you'll meet and do your hobby together!

#### Serious teenage talk

Perhaps you like talking about more important things like politics or education. On this site you can join in group discussions about things that are important to everyone. It's good to hear the opinions of people from different countries. We can learn a lot. So if you care about things like homeless people and human rights, come online and talk about them.

#### Exchange!

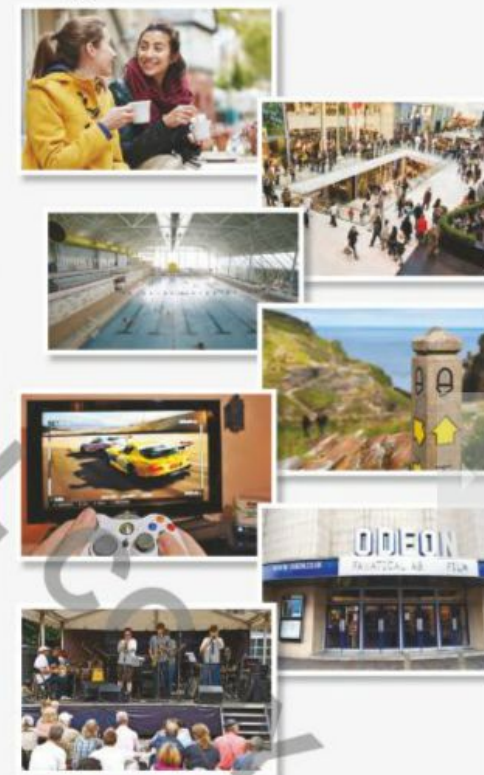
You probably think this site is about exchange visits where students go to other countries for a short time. It is, but that's not all you can do on this site. You can also exchange things with teenagers all round the world. You can exchange music or recipes, books and so on. In this way you can learn a lot about different cultures. And you can meet people and arrange visits too.

#### Learn a language

Do you want to learn another language? This website can find online language classes for nearly every major language in the world! And you can study in an international group with excellent teachers. So if you'd like to learn Mandarin Chinese or Russian or even Norwegian, go on the website and they will help you.

## SPEAKING

8 Work in pairs. You want to spend Saturday afternoon together. Look at the photos and talk about the different things you could do.



## WRITING

9 Write one sentence referring to each of the five points in the email from George, your English friend.

I'm sure you're having a fantastic time in the US. Tell me about your host family and your American friend. Do you have the same interests and hobbies? What's he like?

10 Write your email to George in about 100 words. Use your sentences from Exercise 9, but add some more details.

# 2

## INVENTION

Necessity is the mother of invention.

A PROVERB

### UNIT LANGUAGE AND SKILLS

#### Vocabulary:

- Show what you know – inventions
- technology
- compound nouns – computers
- collocations
- phrasal verbs
- word families

#### Grammar:

- Past Continuous and Past Simple
- used to

#### Listening:

- people talking about why they wanted to become scientists

#### Reading:

- a story about space travel

#### Speaking:

- telling a story

#### Writing:

- an informal email/letter

### FOCUS EXTRA

- Grammar Focus page 113
- WORD STORE booklet pages 4–5
- Workbook pages 20–31 or MyEnglishLab
- MP3s – www.english.com/focus

## 2.1 Vocabulary

Technology • Compound nouns • Collocations • Phrasal verbs

*I can talk about technology.*

### SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

- 1 In pairs, look at the twentieth-century inventions in the box. Decide which three are the most useful to society.

washing machine (1907) refrigerator (1913) radar (1922)  
television (1925) antibiotics (1928) jet engine (1930)  
nuclear power (1942) communications satellite (1945)  
credit card (1958) mobile phone (1973)

- 2 Decide which inventions from Exercise 1 you could/couldn't live without. Then compare your choices with a partner.

- 3 **CD-1.29 MP3-29** In pairs, match the dates in the box with the digital 'firsts' below (1–8). Then listen and check.

1971 1984 1990 1991  
1995 2001 2005 2006

### Digital firsts



- 4 **CD-1.29 MP3-29** Listen again. Are the statements true (T) or false (F)?

- Lots of people still watch the first YouTube video called *Me at the zoo*. ☐
- Ray Tomlinson used the @ symbol to separate the username from the name of the Internet server in an email address. ☐
- You can only download music from the iTunes store. ☐
- Using a mouse to click on an icon and open a document was a very new idea in 1984. ☐
- You could visit a website before August 1991. ☐
- Thanks to Archie, you could go online to find information. ☐
- Classmates is the most popular social networking site in the world. ☐
- A tweet is a text message to everybody who follows you on Twitter. ☐

Go to WORD STORE 2 page 5.

### WORD STORE 2A

- 5 **CD-1.30 MP3-30** Complete WORD STORE 2A with the compound nouns in red in Exercises 3 and 4. Then listen, check and repeat.

- 6 In pairs, complete the questions with compound nouns from WORD STORE 2A. Then ask and answer the questions.

- How many \_\_\_\_\_ messages do you send in a day?
- Do you always use the same \_\_\_\_\_ name and password online?
- Have you got a \_\_\_\_\_ computer or a laptop?
- Which is the most popular search \_\_\_\_\_ in your country?
- How often do you update your profile on a \_\_\_\_\_ networking site?
- Have you got a reliable Internet \_\_\_\_\_ and fast broadband speeds?

### WORD STORE 2B

- 7 **CD-1.31 MP3-31** Complete WORD STORE 2B with the verbs from the underlined phrases in Exercise 4. Then listen, check and repeat.

- 8 Choose the correct options. Then complete the sentences to make them true for you.

- The first thing I do when I visit / go online is ...
- The last document I opened / followed was ...
- The icon I click on / push most often is ...
- The person I'd like to watch / follow on Twitter is ...
- The website I visit / go in most is ...
- The last music I downloaded / followed was ...

### WORD STORE 2C

- 9 **CD-1.32 MP3-32** Listen to a conversation between a grandma and her grandson. Tick the actions she does.

- switch on the computer ☐
- log on to Facebook ☐
- click on the Skype icon ☐
- scroll down the page ☐
- scroll up the page ☐
- hand up ☐

- 10 **CD-1.33 MP3-33** Complete WORD STORE 2C. Match the underlined phrasal verbs in Exercise 9 with the definitions. Then listen, check and repeat.

- 11 In pairs, take turns to explain to your partner how to do one of these tasks. Use the words and phrases in WORD STORE 2C to help you.

- attach a photo to an email
- download an album from iTunes
- find a friend on Facebook

## 2.2 Grammar

### Past Continuous and Past Simple

I can use the *Past Continuous* and the *Past Simple* to describe past events.

- 1 In pairs, read what people say about e-books and printed books. Note down some other advantages and disadvantages.

- 1 When I go on holiday, I don't have to pack heavy books.  
2 I like the feel of a real book in my hands.  
3 I work with computer screens all day – I don't want to read books on a screen too.  
4 Books are so expensive. E-books are cheaper.

- 2 Read about e-ink. Who was Joe Jacobson and why did he have a 'Eureka' moment?



In 1997 Joe Jacobson was working as a researcher for the Massachusetts Institute of Technology (MIT). One summer, he went on holiday to the coast. He was lying on a beach when he finished his book. Unfortunately, he didn't have another one with him. At that moment, he imagined an electronic book that he could download any time he wanted and read in direct sunlight. It was a 'Eureka' moment. His vision became e-ink technology and helped develop the e-readers that we have today.

- 3 Read the GRAMMAR FOCUS. Then complete the examples using the past forms in blue in the text in Exercise 2.

### GRAMMAR FOCUS

#### Past Continuous and Past Simple

- You use the **Past Continuous** to talk about actions in progress in the past.  
In 1997 Joe Jacobson <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ as a researcher for MIT.
- You often use the **Past Continuous** with the **Past Simple** – in narrative situations, to talk about an action (Past Simple) which interrupted another action in progress in the past (Past Continuous).  
He <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ on a beach when he <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ his book.

Past Continuous: was/were + -ing

- + He was working ...
- You weren't working ...
- ? Were they working ...?
- Yes, they were./No, they weren't.

- 4 Complete the opening paragraphs of two famous stories with the Past Simple or Past Continuous form of the verbs in brackets.



David Copperfield  
Charles Dickens

It was a terrible stormy night six months after my father's death. My mother <sup>1</sup>was sitting (sit) alone by the fire, waiting for her baby to arrive. She <sup>2</sup> (feel) sad and ill. Suddenly, she <sup>3</sup> (hear) a noise outside. 'There's someone at the door, Peggotty,' my mother <sup>4</sup> (call). 'Who is it?' Peggotty was her servant and her only real friend. 'I'll go and see,' Peggotty <sup>5</sup> (reply). She <sup>6</sup> (go) and <sup>7</sup> (open) the door.

As the carriage moved quickly along the rough dry road, Jonathan Harker <sup>8</sup> (look out) at the changing view. Behind him was a land of small green hills and colourful fields of fruit trees. Now he <sup>9</sup> (drive) into the Transylvanian mountains through a thick forest. It <sup>10</sup> (get) dark and the other people in the carriage <sup>11</sup> (be) quiet and afraid. A woman opposite him <sup>12</sup> (reach) towards him and <sup>13</sup> (put) something in his hand. It <sup>14</sup> (be) a small, silver cross. 'Wear it around your neck,' she said. 'You'll be safe.'



Dracula  
Marianne Kiefer

- 5 Which story would you like to continue reading? Discuss your reasons in pairs.
- 6 Complete the sentences with the Past Simple or Past Continuous form of the verbs in brackets. Then tick the sentences that are true for you.
- My parents \_\_\_\_\_ (study) when they \_\_\_\_\_ (met).
  - My computer \_\_\_\_\_ (crash) when I \_\_\_\_\_ (do) my homework last night.
  - I \_\_\_\_\_ (watch) TV when my mum \_\_\_\_\_ (get) home yesterday.
  - It \_\_\_\_\_ (rain) when I \_\_\_\_\_ (wake up) this morning.
  - I \_\_\_\_\_ (burn) myself when I \_\_\_\_\_ (make) breakfast.
  - A friend \_\_\_\_\_ (text) me when I \_\_\_\_\_ (walk) to school.
- 7 In pairs, write questions for the sentences in Exercise 6. Then ask and answer the questions.

A: Were your parents studying when they met?  
B: No, they weren't.

Grammar Focus page 113

## 2.3 Listening

### Multiple choice

I can identify specific detail in conversations.



- 1 CD 1.34 MP3-24 In pairs, label the photos with the words in the box. Then listen, check and repeat.

chemistry physics marine biology  
archaeology geology ecology

### EXAM FOCUS Multiple choice

- 2 CD 1.35 MP3-35 Listen and choose the correct answer.

- What does the girl want to study in the future?  
photo A photo B photo C
- The girl and the boy have both seen one of the documentaries. What was it about?  
photo D photo E photo F

- 3 Complete the descriptions with the words in the box.

an archaeologist a chemist an ecologist  
a geologist a marine biologist a physicist

- \_\_\_\_\_ finds ways to make chemicals useful to society.
- \_\_\_\_\_ studies ways of protecting the environment.
- \_\_\_\_\_ studies rocks and the history of the earth.
- \_\_\_\_\_ asks 'big' questions about the laws of nature.
- \_\_\_\_\_ studies people who lived thousands of years ago.
- \_\_\_\_\_ studies, observes and protects marine life.

- 4 CD 1.36 MP3-36 Listen to five speakers. Choose from the list A-F what each speaker wants. Use the letters only once. There is one extra letter.

Speaker 1: ☐ Speaker 3: ☐ Speaker 5: ☐  
Speaker 2: ☐ Speaker 4: ☐

The speaker wants to:

- find answers to important questions.
- discover new things that help people.
- explore oceans and preserve the ocean environment.
- study our prehistoric ancestors.
- study the evolution of our planet.
- find solutions to nature's problems.

- 5 CD 1.36 MP3-36 Complete the questions about the speakers with the words in the box. Then listen and answer the questions.

cures discoveries evidence  
experiments hours research

- Who wants to **collect** \_\_\_\_\_ about global warming?
- Who wants to **make** new \_\_\_\_\_ and **find** new \_\_\_\_\_?
- Who loves **doing** \_\_\_\_\_ and analysing data?
- Who **spent** \_\_\_\_\_ in the Egyptian Room in the Louvre?
- Who is **doing** \_\_\_\_\_ into climate change?

### PRONUNCIATION FOCUS

- 6 CD 1.37 MP3-37 Complete the table. Then listen, check and repeat. Mark the stress.

Subject	Job
1 archaeology	archaeologist
2 biology	
3 _____	chemist
4 ecology	
5 geology	
6 mathematics	mathematician
7 _____	physicist
8 science	

### WORD STORE 2D

- 7 CD 1.38 MP3-38 Complete WORD STORE 2D. Add nouns or verbs to the table. Mark the stress. Then listen, check and repeat.

## 2.4 Reading

### Multiple choice

I can find specific details in a story about space travel.

- 1 In pairs, look at photos A–E on page 29 and match them with headings 1–5. Then discuss what you know about Apollo 13.

- 1 NASA engineers at mission control in Houston ☐
- 2 The capsule splashed down in the sea ☐
- 3 The launch of Apollo 13 ☐
- 4 Earth seen from the moon ☐
- 5 Astronauts who were on board the spacecraft ☐

- 2 Read the text on page 29 and answer the questions.

- 1 Where was Apollo 13 flying to?
- 2 Why didn't it get there?
- 3 Who helped the astronauts solve the problem?
- 4 How many days in total did the astronauts spend in space?

### EXAM FOCUS Multiple choice

- 3 Read the text again. For questions 1–6, choose the correct answer, A, B, C or D.

- 1 Reg Turnill found out there was a problem with Apollo 13 when he was
  - A sitting at his desk.
  - B getting ready for bed.
  - C entering mission control.
  - D talking to Jim Lovell.
- 2 The workers at mission control were
  - A planning to walk on the moon.
  - B not expecting any problems.
  - C working hard when the explosion took place.
  - D concerned about the spacecraft.
- 3 The spacecraft lost most of its fuel
  - A through the hatch.
  - B because of the explosion.
  - C several hours after the explosion.
  - D very slowly.
- 4 NASA engineers
  - A did not expect the astronauts to return.
  - B were not interested in help from outside.
  - C immediately formed a big team to fix the problem.
  - D continued working as usual.
- 5 The main problem on board was
  - A very little oxygen and water.
  - B very little light.
  - C a lot of gas.
  - D a lot of oxygen and water.
- 6 Where do you think this text is from?
  - A a scientific report
  - B a science fiction story
  - C a magazine article
  - D a newspaper report on 17 April 1970

- 4 Match the words in blue in the text with the definitions.

- 1 small door – hatch
- 2 thought of/produced –
- 3 understand –
- 4 working –
- 5 not be worried any more –
- 6 getting less and less –
- 7 shout happily –
- 8 doing/taking part in –

- 5 CD 1.40 MP3-40 Complete the text with the correct form of words from Exercise 4. Then listen and check.

### One small step for man

In 1962, US President JF Kennedy promised to put a man on the moon before 1970. It was seven more years before NASA <sup>1</sup> figured out how to do it. In July 1969, when time was <sup>2</sup> out, three astronauts <sup>3</sup> out the historic mission on board Apollo 11. American astronaut Neil Armstrong opened the <sup>4</sup> and became the first man to walk on the moon. In Houston, engineers who were on <sup>5</sup> at mission control <sup>6</sup> a sigh of relief when they saw Armstrong step onto the moon. All over the world, people were watching on TV and they <sup>7</sup> as they heard Armstrong say his famous words: 'That's one small step for man, one giant leap for mankind.' Armstrong <sup>8</sup> up with his famous words after landing on the moon.



- 6 In pairs, discuss these opinions about space exploration. Which do you agree with?

- Space exploration is very expensive – we should solve problems on earth first such as poverty and starvation.
- The earth's population is growing – we will need to live on another planet one day.
- We need space exploration to answer the big questions: are we alone? are there other forms of life out there?

### WORD STORE 2E

- 7 CD 1.41 MP3-41 Complete WORD STORE 2E. Match verbs and nouns to make collocations. Then listen, check and repeat.

## 'HOUSTON, WE HAVE A PROBLEM'



CD 1.39 MP3-39

It was 13 April 1970, two days after the launch of Apollo 13. BBC journalist, Reg Turnill was reporting on the mission from the space centre in Houston. He describes the moment he realised there was a problem with Apollo 13:

'I looked into mission control just before going to bed. I was going through the door when I heard Jim Lovell say, "Houston, we have a problem."

Instead of going to bed, the journalist went back to his desk and stayed there for the next three days.



Apollo 13's commander,

<sup>15</sup> Jim Lovell, together with his colleagues

Fred Haise and Jack Swigert, were carrying out NASA's third mission to the moon. Lovell and Haise were planning to walk on the moon. But this never happened.

Nearly two days into the flight, things were going so smoothly that Joe

<sup>20</sup> Kerwin, on duty at mission control, told the crew, 'The spacecraft is in real good shape (...). We're bored to tears down here.'

Several hours later, the crew heard a loud explosion. On board the spacecraft, warning lights were flashing. One of the fuel tanks was empty and one of them was close to zero. Thirteen minutes after the explosion, <sup>25</sup> Jim Lovell looked out of the hatch. Gas was escaping into space.

NASA reacted quickly. They called in all the most experienced astronauts, including Neil Armstrong and Buzz Aldrin. They worked day and night with the NASA engineers and the crew of Apollo 13 to find a solution.

<sup>30</sup> Both mission control and the astronauts remained very calm, but by breakfast time, the media were going crazy. Millions of people were following the events on television. The newspapers reported that the astronauts only had a ten-percent chance of getting home safely.

Meanwhile, on board, the astronauts did not discuss the possibility of <sup>35</sup> not returning home. They were trying to figure out what was happening and how to fix it. Supplies of oxygen and water were running out, but with the help of the engineers at mission control, they came up with a plan.

The spacecraft orbited the moon, using its gravity to return to earth.

<sup>40</sup> As the spacecraft left outer space and re-entered into the earth's atmosphere, nobody knew whether the astronauts would live or die.

Under parachutes, the spacecraft appeared through the clouds and exhausted workers at mission control were finally able to breathe a sigh of relief, raise their hands and cheer.

<sup>45</sup> The capsule successfully returned to earth on Friday 17 April 1970. It splashed down in the Pacific Ocean, near Tonga, where a rescue boat was waiting to recover the three astronauts.



## 2.5 Grammar

used to

I can talk about past states and repeated actions.



- 1 In pairs, look at the photos and say in what ways these things are different today.

fashion friends music travel  
school technology relationships

People don't buy records now, they download music from the internet.

- 2 **CD 1.42 MP3-42** Listen to Chris talking with his granddad. Are the statements about Chris's granddad true (T) or false (F)?

- He used to phone people from the phone in the sitting room.
- He used to send text messages.
- He didn't use to live near his friends.
- His mum didn't use to like the loud music in his bedroom.
- His parents bought him a camera for his sixteenth birthday.
- He used to have five or six good friends.

- 3 Read the GRAMMAR FOCUS. Then complete the examples using the past forms in blue in Exercise 2.

### GRAMMAR FOCUS

used to

• You use **used to + infinitive** to talk about past states that are no longer true.

He <sup>1</sup> have five or six good friends.

• You use **used to + infinitive** to talk about regular past actions that don't happen any more.

He <sup>2</sup> phone people from the phone in the sitting room.

• You don't use **used to + infinitive** to talk about a past action that happened once only, you use the **Past Simple**.

His parents <sup>3</sup> bought him a camera for his sixteenth birthday. (NOT used to buy)

used to + infinitive

+ I used to work ...

- He didn't use to work ...

? Did you use to work ...?  
Yes, we did./No, we didn't.

- 4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets. Use **used to** or the **Present Simple**.

- People used to read (read) maps, but now they use (use) GPS systems.
- People don't use (not use) their cars much, but now they drive (drive) everywhere.
- People update (update) their online profiles now, but they write (write) letters.
- Children play (play) inside now, but in the past they played (play) outside.
- Teachers suggest (suggest) books, but now they give out (give out) website addresses.
- Families watch (watch) TV together, but now they watch (watch) it individually.
- Students use (use) Google now, but they look up (look up) things in encyclopedias.
- Parents don't worry (not worry) so much, but now they give (give) children less freedom.

- 5 Where possible, replace the **Past Simple** in the sentences with **used to**.

When I was at primary school:

- my parents took me to school every day.
- I didn't go online much.
- I went on a school trip to the Science Museum.
- I didn't like school dinners.
- my parents bought me my first mobile phone.
- I wanted to be an astronaut.

- 6 In pairs, write questions for the sentences in Exercise 5. Then ask and answer the questions.

A: Did your parents use to take you to school?

B: Yes, they did.

Grammar Focus page 113

## 2.6 Speaking

Telling a story

I can tell a story and be a good listener.

- 1 In pairs, look at the holiday photo of Ed below and answer the questions.

- Where was Ed?
- What was he doing?
- What do you think his problem was?



- 2 **CD 1.43 MP3-43** Read and listen to the story. Check your ideas from Exercise 1.

Lisa: Hi, Ed. How was your holiday in Australia?

Ed: It was really good, thanks – except for the day I nearly died.

Lisa: What happened?

Ed: I was doing some climbing. At first, the sun was shining and I was enjoying myself. But all of a sudden, the weather changed. It became really foggy and I couldn't see the path.

Lisa: Oh dear, that sounds frightening!

Ed: I was pretty worried. I continued for a while, but finally, I realised I was lost.

Lisa: What did you do?

Ed: Fortunately, I had my phone with me, so I called my father – 9,000 miles away in England! He called the Australian police and told them where I was. Then they called me. Unfortunately, my battery went dead after five seconds. It was dark and cold. I sat under a rock, put on my torch and waited.

Lisa: Oh no, what a nightmare!

Ed: Eventually, they found me. I was so relieved. I used to go climbing on my own all the time, but I'll never do it again.

- 3 There are often five stages in a story. Match stages 1–5 in Ed's story with labels a–e.

- |                 |                          |               |                          |
|-----------------|--------------------------|---------------|--------------------------|
| a background    | <input type="checkbox"/> | d problem     | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| b final comment | <input type="checkbox"/> | e main events | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| c introduction  | <input type="checkbox"/> |               |                          |

- 4 Complete the SPEAKING FOCUS with the underlined phrases in the story in Exercise 2.

### SPEAKING FOCUS

Telling a story

Use the right tenses.

• Past Continuous for the 'background':

The sun was shining and I was enjoying myself.

• Past Simple for the 'problem' and the 'main events':

The weather changed. I couldn't see the path.

Use linkers.

• Beginning: To start with/At <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_

• Middle: Suddenly/All of a <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_/  
Luckily/Fortunately/ <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_

• End: In the end/Finally/ <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_

Say how you felt.

I was excited/frightened/relieved/surprised/  
shocked/worried, etc.

Make a final comment.

It was the best/worst day of my life!

I'll never forget the look on his face!

I'll never <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.

Listening to a story

Give a neutral response.

Really?/Oh dear!/Oh no!

Give a strong response.

That sounds amazing/funny!/? \_\_\_\_\_.

What a great story/a <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_!

Respond with questions.

What happened?

What did you do?

- 5 You are going to tell a story and your partner is going to listen and respond. In pairs, follow the instructions.

• Choose a topic from the box or use your own idea.

a dangerous situation    a nice surprise  
some good or bad luck    a mistake  
something that happened on holiday

• Think about what you are going to say and make notes under the headings for the five stages of a story from Exercise 3.

- 6 In pairs, follow the instructions to practise telling your stories. Then act out your conversation.

Student A: Use your notes in Exercise 5 to tell the story.

Student B: React and respond to what Student A says. Use the SPEAKING FOCUS to help you.

## 2.7 Writing

### An informal email/letter

*I can write to someone and recount a past event.*

To: Adam  
Subject: You must see this!

Hi Adam,

I've just come back from a visit to the Copernicus Science Centre – it's really cool! You MUST go! You'll love it. I liked the Planetarium best. If you go, **make sure** you visit the Robot Room. It's great fun! Write and tell me what you think!

Speak soon,

Love,  
Alice

To: Alice  
Subject: Re: You must see this!

Hi Alice,

Just a quick **message** to say a big THANK YOU for suggesting the Copernicus Science Centre. It was a fantastic. <sup>1</sup> **First**, we went to the gallery and did some interactive experiments. <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ we went to see the Robotic Theatre. That was amazing – the actors are robots! It was brilliant and we stayed there for ages, but <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ it finished and we went to the canteen for lunch.

<sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ we went to the Planetarium. We stayed there for at least two hours. <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ we watched a film about the history of space – I learnt so much. <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ we watched another film about black holes – **that was scary**. <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ we were tired, so we relaxed in the Discovery Park. That was my favourite thing. <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ we left at six o'clock. We were tired, but happy.

Best wishes,  
Adam

1 In pairs, list the top three tourist attractions in your area. Compare your answers with other students.

2 Read the emails and answer the questions.

- 1 Why does Alice write to Adam?
- 2 What did Adam like best in Copernicus Science Centre?

3 Read Adam's email again and choose the correct answer, A, B or C.

- |                |              |              |
|----------------|--------------|--------------|
| 1 A First      | B Then       | C Afterwards |
| 2 A In the end | B First      | C Then       |
| 3 A after that | B eventually | C first      |
| 4 A First      | B Afterwards | C Finally    |
| 5 A Finally    | B In the end | C First      |
| 6 A Then       | B First      | C Eventually |
| 7 A Finally    | B After that | C First      |
| 8 A Finally    | B Later      | C Then       |

4 Match the sentence halves to describe some of the things Adam did.

- |              |                          |                          |
|--------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1 He went    | <input type="checkbox"/> | a some robots.           |
| 2 He watched | <input type="checkbox"/> | b in the Discovery Park. |
| 3 He saw     | <input type="checkbox"/> | c at six o'clock.        |
| 4 He relaxed | <input type="checkbox"/> | d some films.            |
| 5 He left    | <input type="checkbox"/> | e some experiments.      |
| 6 He did     | <input type="checkbox"/> | f for lunch.             |

5 Put the events from Exercise 4 in the correct order and add linkers to describe Adam's day.

*First Adam did some experiments. Then ...*

6 Complete the WRITING FOCUS with the words in purple in the emails.

### WRITING FOCUS

#### An informal email/letter

• Start the email with a short phrase. You don't have to write complete sentences.

Just a quick '\_\_\_\_\_ to say ...

• Use imperatives to make suggestions or give advice.  
If you go, '\_\_\_\_\_ sure you visit the Robot Room.

• Use dashes (–) to add comments or more information.  
We watched another film about black holes – '\_\_\_\_\_.

• Use linkers.  
Beginning: First  
Middle: Then/Later/After that/Afterwards  
End: Finally/In the end/Eventually

7 Choose the correct options.

- 1 We had a great time at the Science Exhibition. *Finally / First* we saw some robots and then we looked at some new mobile phones.
- 2 We had lunch. *After that / In the end* we went round the shop and bought some cards.
- 3 We were in the queue to go into the museum for ages but *eventually / afterwards* we bought our tickets.
- 4 *First* we went to the supermarket to get some food. *Eventually / Then* we went to the sports shop to look at football boots. *Finally / Then* we went to a jewellery shop to buy Anne a birthday present.

## Writing task

You recently received an email from your friend, Sophie. Read part of her email and write your reply to Sophie.

Have you been to an interesting museum or gallery recently – or maybe an exhibition? I'm looking for somewhere to take my cousin. She's staying with us for a week. Tell me where you went and what it was like. Thanks!

A Write your email in about 100 words. Include these points.

- Thank Sophie for her email.
- Tell her where you've been recently.
- Say if you enjoyed it.
- Describe what you did there.
- Say what you liked best and why.
- Wish Sophie and her cousin a good time.

### Useful language

- It's great to hear from you!
- Last week I went/saw/visited ...
- It was fantastic!
- I had a great time.
- I really enjoyed ... because I love doing experiments.
- If she is interested in history/modern art/science, take her to ...
- I think she'll love ...
- My favourite part was ...
- The best thing was ...
- I liked ... best.
- You can see ...
- I hope you have a wonderful time.
- I'm sure you will enjoy it.

B Use the ideas in the WRITING FOCUS and the model to help you.

C Check.

- ✓ Have you answered all parts of the task?
- ✓ Have you used phrases from the model, WRITING FOCUS and Useful language box?
- ✓ Have you used linkers?
- ✓ Have you used the correct past tenses?

# FOCUS REVIEW 2

## VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

- 1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in the box. There are two extra verbs.

click crash do fix get go open visit

- Can you help me? I don't know how to \_\_\_\_\_ a problem with my computer.
- The instructions say I must \_\_\_\_\_ on an icon, but I can't see it.
- I \_\_\_\_\_ online every day to read the news and answer emails.
- I usually \_\_\_\_\_ home very late, so I'm often tired.
- He \_\_\_\_\_ a website about cars once a week to check the prices.
- \_\_\_\_\_ the text document and complete it.

- 2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in capitals.

- The \_\_\_\_\_ of advanced computers has taken very little time. **DEVELOP**
- To contact Tom, I often use our favourite social \_\_\_\_\_ site. **NETWORK**
- This information is from 2012. Why don't they \_\_\_\_\_ their website? **DATE**
- After years of work, the scientist made an important \_\_\_\_\_ **DISCOVER**
- Use your \_\_\_\_\_ and you will write something creative. **IMAGINE**
- He works as a \_\_\_\_\_ in a laboratory. **SCIENCE**

- 3 Use the prompts to write sentences.

- the first moon landing / be / in 1969
- ten years ago / my brother / still / study / at university
- Mabel / find / some keys / on the pavement yesterday
- I / have / my first driving lesson last week
- I / talk / on my mobile phone / when / my mum / ask / me a question
- what / you / do / this time last year?

- 4 Choose the correct options.

- Did he use to live / living here before moving to Oxford?
- She didn't use to go / go shopping yesterday.
- I don't like / didn't use to like spicy food. Now I love it.
- We did / used to do a lot of exercise last weekend.
- Did you used / use to ride a bike to school?
- Did she buy / use to buy a laptop last year?

## LANGUAGE IN USE

- 5 Choose the answer, A, B or C, that is closest in meaning to the underlined words.

- I'm afraid there isn't any ink, so I can't print anything.  
A we have hung up C we have run out of  
B we have scrolled up
- When my brother got his first job, he was a student.  
A studied B was studying C used to study
- Can you help me come up with a solution to my problems?  
A fix B follow C find
- A: When I was a child, I was in a serious car accident and I spent a month in hospital.  
B: What a nightmare!  
A What a great story! C Really? That's cool!  
B That sounds frightening!
- I had an accident in the mountains, but luckily, I managed to phone for help.  
A eventually B fortunately C suddenly
- I didn't use to send my homework to my teacher by email five years ago.  
A didn't send C wasn't sending  
B haven't sent

- 6 Choose the correct answer, A, B or C, to complete both sentences.

- Where shall I \_\_\_\_\_ this picture?  
Please don't \_\_\_\_\_ up. I have something more to tell you.  
A put B hang C give
- Can you show me how to log \_\_\_\_\_ to this computer, please?  
I don't like flying \_\_\_\_\_ board small planes.  
A on B off C with
- I can't \_\_\_\_\_ this bag any further. It's too heavy!  
I don't like studying chemistry from a book. I'd like to \_\_\_\_\_ out experiments in our school lab.  
A do B take C carry
- They want to \_\_\_\_\_ world events, so they buy a newspaper every day.  
Do you \_\_\_\_\_ your favourite pop stars on Twitter?  
A follow B watch C meet
- I can't figure \_\_\_\_\_ how to do this exercise.  
Please turn off the light before you go \_\_\_\_\_ of the room.  
A around B off C out
- Tara uses her mobile phone to \_\_\_\_\_ online.  
I've got so much homework, I think I'm going to \_\_\_\_\_ crazy!  
A get B go C find

## LISTENING

- 7 **CD-1.44 MP3-144** Listen to six recordings. Choose the correct picture, A, B or C, to answer the questions.

- 1 When does the Science exam start?



- 2 What did Eva give her gran for her birthday?



- 3 What was the weather like when the boy's class went to the beach?



- 4 What does the man think is good for science lessons?



- 5 How do the boy and girl plan to travel to the exhibition?



- 6 What is the boy going to send his brother?



## SPEAKING

- 8 In pairs, complete the sentences with one word in each gap. Then ask and answer the questions.

- \_\_\_\_\_ you play computer games in your free time?
- \_\_\_\_\_ you do anything interesting last weekend?
- \_\_\_\_\_ you going to use a social networking site later today?
- \_\_\_\_\_ do you enjoy doing at the weekends?

- 9 In pairs, write down five words to describe the photo.



- 10 In pairs, talk about what you can see in the photo.

- Where are the two people?
- What are they wearing?
- How are they feeling?
- What has just happened?

- 11 When was the last time you did any sport? What happened?

## WRITING

- 12 Read the writing task and make some notes to plan your story. Then, in pairs, discuss your ideas. Use these questions to help you.

- When did it happen?
- Why did you go for a walk?
- What was the weather like?
- What did you discover?

Your teacher has asked you to write a story. Read the title and write your story, including the points below.

### Story title

An interesting discovery

### Include:

- a walk in the forest
- a strange light

- 13 Write your story in about 100 words.

# 3

## THE ARTS

Every child is an artist. The problem is how to remain an artist when he grows up.

PABLO PICASSO (1881–1973),  
A SPANISH PAINTER

### UNIT LANGUAGE AND SKILLS

#### Vocabulary:

- Show what you know – art and media
- types of books and writers
- 'a part of a whole'; films, music, art
- adjectives with positive or negative meanings

#### Grammar:

- Present Perfect with just, already, (not) yet and Past Simple
- comparative and superlative adjectives
- too and enough

#### Listening:

- a radio programme about a street artist

#### Reading:

- film descriptions and reviews

#### Speaking:

- describing a photo

#### Writing:

- an informal email/letter

### FOCUS EXTRA

- Grammar Focus page 114
- WORD STORE booklet pages 6–7
- Workbook pages 32–43 or MyEnglishLab
- MP3s – [www.english.com/focus](http://www.english.com/focus)

## 3.1 Vocabulary

Types of books and writers • Films • Music

I can talk about books, films and music.

### SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

- 1 In pairs, put the words in the box under the appropriate heading.

art-gallery ballet band best-seller costume  
documentary hit picture stage TV presenter writer

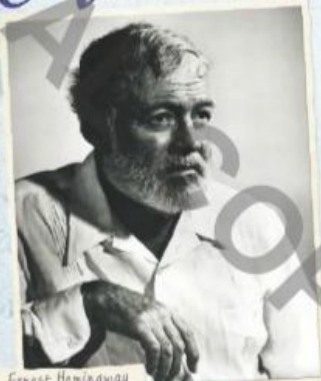
art	books	film/theatre	media	music
art gallery				

- 2 Think of three more words to add to each group.

- 3 How do you like to study? In pairs, discuss the ideas in the box and your own ideas.

alone anywhere at night in silence  
in the evening in my room in the morning  
with my music or the TV on with other people

## How writers write



Ernest Hemingway



Ludwig van Beethoven



The Beatles



J. K. Rowling

- 4 Read the text to find out how some famous writers used to write. Who do you think had the most unusual writing habits?

- 5 Complete the facts about other famous writers with the words in red in the text.

- Mary Shelley was a famous English \_\_\_\_\_. She wrote *Frankenstein*.
- Eugène Ionesco was a Romanian-French \_\_\_\_\_. His plays were part of the *Theatre of the Absurd*.
- Giuseppe Verdi was an Italian \_\_\_\_\_. He wrote famous operas like *Aida*.
- Federico García Lorca was a Spanish \_\_\_\_\_. His poems were about Andalusia.
- Pedro Almodóvar is a Spanish film director and \_\_\_\_\_. He won an Oscar for his screenplay *Talk to Her* in 2002.
- Bob Woodward was a \_\_\_\_\_ for *The Washington Post*. After Woodward's famous report on the Watergate scandal in 1972, President Nixon had to resign.

Writers have very clear preferences about where and how they write. For instance, some writers like to have people around them and background noise, but others prefer isolation.

*Novelist and journalist Ernest Hemingway used to write standing up. D.H. Lawrence wrote under a tree. Jane Austen, author of romantic fiction, wrote on a small table in her family living room. Children's author and poet Roald Dahl sat in a very old armchair in a shed and French novelist Marcel Proust wrote in bed. Graham Greene, author, playwright and literary critic, used to write only in the morning. After 500 words, he stopped, even in the middle of a sentence.*

*Nicholson's Café in Edinburgh became famous because J.K. Rowling sat there and wrote some chapters of her first best-selling fantasy novel, *Harry Potter and the Philosopher's Stone*. She used to sit at the same table, drinking coffee and writing in a notebook with her baby asleep in her pushchair.*

*Most novelists write alone, but scriptwriters and songwriters often write together. A team of seven writers wrote scripts each week for the popular American sitcom *Friends*. Lennon and McCartney wrote 180 songs together for the Beatles.*

*Perhaps the strangest of all was classical composer Beethoven. He was completely deaf when he wrote the famous *Ninth Symphony*, so he took the legs off his piano and felt the vibrations of the music through the floor.*

Go to WORD STORE 3 page 7.

### WORD STORE 3A

- 6 **CD+1 MP3-45** Complete WORD STORE 3A with the words in red in the text. Then listen, check and repeat.

### WORD STORE 3B

- 7 **CD+2 MP3-46** Complete WORD STORE 3B. Use these definitions to help you. What is the mystery word in the crossword? Then listen, check and repeat.

- a book about a person's life by that person
- a story about imaginary future events (often in space)
- a book with instructions on how to prepare food
- a book with tourist and travel information
- a story about detectives and police work
- a famous book from the past that has a lot of influence
- a book with facts on many different subjects
- a frightening story about dead people
- traditional children's stories that include magic

- 8 In pairs, decide if the types of books in WORD STORE 3B are fiction or non-fiction. Then tell your partner which types of books you like or don't like reading.

### WORD STORE 3C

- 9 **CD+3 MP3-47** Complete WORD STORE 3C. Cross out the incorrect options. Then listen, check and repeat.

- 10 Complete the facts with words from WORD STORE 3C.

- In total, there were 236 \_\_\_\_\_ of the \_\_\_\_\_ *Friends*.
- The British National Anthem has three \_\_\_\_\_, but most people only know the first one.
- 'To be or not to be?' comes from Shakespeare's \_\_\_\_\_, *Hamlet*. \_\_\_\_\_ III, \_\_\_\_\_ 1.
- Leo Tolstoy's classic novel *War and Peace* has 365 \_\_\_\_\_.
- The famous shower \_\_\_\_\_ in Hitchcock's thriller *Psycho* is only forty-five seconds long.
- Echoes* is a \_\_\_\_\_ on Pink Floyd's \_\_\_\_\_ *Meddle*. It is over twenty-three minutes long.

- 11 In pairs, tell each other about your favourite:

- track on an album
- scene in a film
- episode of a sitcom.

## 3.2 Grammar

Present Perfect with *just*, *already*, *(not) yet* and *Past Simple*

I can use the **Present Perfect** and the **Past Simple** to talk about past actions.

- What music do you like? Write down your favourite musicians. Then, in pairs, compare your preferences.
  - favourite band: \_\_\_\_\_
  - favourite female singer: \_\_\_\_\_
  - favourite male singer: \_\_\_\_\_
- Read about the Brit School in London. What do Leona Lewis, Adele and Jessie J all have in common?



The Brit School opened in 1991. Over the years, it has produced many successful graduates. Leona Lewis, Adele and Jessie J are three former students – they have sold millions of albums between them. In 2006, Leona Lewis won *The X Factor* and she has already sold more than ten million albums worldwide. Adele has had number one hits in the British and American charts, including the title track to the James Bond movie *Skyfall*. Singer and songwriter Jessie J **has already won** numerous music awards and she's written songs for other international artists such as Miley Cyrus. Another term **has just ended** at the Brit School. Have they produced new stars? Probably! We **haven't heard** of them yet, but we will!

- Read the GRAMMAR FOCUS. Complete the examples with the verbs in blue in the text. Then underline five more Present Perfect verbs in the text.

### GRAMMAR FOCUS

Present Perfect Simple and Past Simple

You use the **Present Perfect Simple** for finished actions in time up to now. You never say when they happened.

Time expressions: *ever*, *never*, *since then*, *just*, *already* (usually affirmative), *(not) yet* (usually negative or questions)  
**just** – has happened very recently

Another term <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ **just** \_\_\_\_\_ at the Brit School.

**(not) yet** – hasn't happened but probably will happen

We <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ of them **yet**.

**already** – has happened earlier than expected

She <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ **already** \_\_\_\_\_ numerous music awards.

You use the **Past Simple** to talk about finished actions in the past. You usually say when they happened.

In 2006, Leona Lewis <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ *The X Factor*.

- Choose the correct time expressions and write them in the correct place in the sentences.

- I lent my iPod to my sister, but she hasn't given it back *(yet, **ago**, just)*
- I've updated my Facebook profile with some new photos. *(just / yet)*
- I want to learn the guitar, but I haven't found a teacher. *(already / yet)*
- My favourite band released a new album today and I've downloaded it. *(already / yet)*
- I've finished a really good book. *(already / just)*
- I can watch TV tonight because I've done my homework. *(yet / already)*

- Complete the text with the correct Present Perfect or Past simple form of the verbs in brackets.

Adele Laurie Blue Adkins <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (grow up) in London with her mum and <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (begin) singing when she was four. She <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (graduate) from the Brit School in 2006. Adele <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (already/earn) millions of pounds, but according to her friends, she <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (not change). She's still the same girl they <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (know) before she was famous. She <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (write) her first two albums about two relationships that ended badly. But now she is in a happy relationship – will she continue to write good songs? Adele says, 'I don't know what's going to happen if my music career goes wrong. I <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (not have) a proper job yet!'



- Write one sentence with *already* and one with *yet* for each item on the list.

### 6 cultural things to do before you are 18

- see a live band
- visit a big art gallery
- listen to a Beethoven symphony
- act in a play
- read a classic novel
- write a poem or a short story

I've **already** seen a live band. ✓  
 I **haven't** seen a live band yet. ✗

- In pairs, write questions about the sentences in Exercise 6. Then ask and answer the questions. If your partner answers yes, ask three more questions.

A: Have you seen a live band yet?

B: Yes, I have.

A: Who did you see? Where did you see them?  
 What were they like?

Grammar Focus page 114

## 3.3 Listening

### Multiple choice

I can identify specific detail in a radio programme about a street artist.

- In pairs, discuss the questions using the words and phrases in the table.

- What kind of art do you like/not like?
- When was the last time you saw some art?
- Where did you go and what did you see?

Type of artist	painter photographer sculptor
Type of art	black-and-white photographs classic oil paintings landscapes modern abstract paintings portraits sculpture street art
Where to see it	at a museum in an art gallery in public places painted on walls and buildings

- Look at three works of art by French street artist JR. Which words or phrases from Exercise 1 can you use to describe them?



### EXAM FOCUS Multiple choice

- CD 2.4 MP3-48 Listen again and choose the correct answer, A, B or C.

- Katy West is
  - A a guest artist of the week.
  - B an artist in her studio.
  - C the editor of a photography magazine.
- Because most of his work is illegal, JR
  - A doesn't want people to know his name.
  - B doesn't want people to see his face.
  - C uses his full name.
- JR prefers to have exhibitions in
  - A the Pompidou Centre in Paris.
  - B public places.
  - C art galleries and museums.
- For his first project, he pasted portraits of
  - A poor people in rich parts of Paris.
  - B rich people in dangerous parts of Paris.
  - C rich people in poor suburbs.
- In Africa and Brazil he took photographs of women because
  - A they have beautiful eyes.
  - B the rest of the world wants to hear their story.
  - C they don't usually have a chance to tell their story.
- Which statement describes JR and his work?
  - A He is interested in people and their identity.
  - B He wants to have exhibitions everywhere.
  - C He only likes taking photographs of women.

- In pairs, discuss the questions.

- What photographs or pictures do you see every day?
- What kind of pictures are they and what/who are the subjects?
- Who is the best photographer or artist you know?

### PRONUNCIATION FOCUS

- CD 2.5 MP3-47 Complete the table. Then listen, repeat and underline the stressed syllable in each word. In which cases does the word stress change syllable?

Country	Nationality
1 Brazil	<u>Brazilian</u>
2 Italy	_____
3 Egypt	_____
4 Mexico	_____
5 Hungary	_____
6 Poland	_____

- Add six more countries and nationalities to the table in Exercise 6 and practise the pronunciation.

### WORD STORE 3D

- CD 2.6 MP3-50 Complete WORD STORE 3D with the words in the box. Then listen, check and repeat.

- CD 2.4 MP3-48 Listen to a radio programme and check your ideas in Exercise 2. Number the photos in the order in which you hear about them.

## 3.4 Reading

### Matching

I can identify specific detail in film descriptions and reviews.

- 1 In pairs, talk about films. Use these phrases and the words in the box.

- I love ...
- I really like ...
- I quite like ...
- I don't really like ...
- I can't stand ...

action and adventure films  
crime films documentaries historical dramas  
horror films musicals romantic comedies  
science fiction or fantasy films thrillers  
war films westerns

- 2 Read about the type of films five people like. What film would you recommend for each person?



Simon, 17

I like a good story and I particularly like factual films. I enjoy films that teach me something about people and the world. I don't like violence or blood.



Paula, 16

When I choose a film, I want it to be relaxing and entertaining. I don't want anything serious and I don't mind if the storyline is unoriginal. I like funny films with happy endings.



Julia, 18

I like films about relationships, but I'm not keen on a lot of the romantic comedies because they're so unrealistic. I quite like emotional films – films that make me laugh or cry.



John, 16

I hate boring films or anything too romantic. I like thrillers (but not very scary), dramas and crime stories with good acting and clever dialogue.



Ben, 18

I like films that make me forget real life – science fiction, fantasy or even horror. I love films with good special effects and lots of tension. I want to be scared!

### EXAM FOCUS Matching

- 3 Read the descriptions again and the film reviews. Decide which film (A–F) would be the most suitable for each person (1–5).

- 1 Simon ☐
- 2 Paula ☐
- 3 Julia ☐
- 4 John ☐
- 5 Ben ☐

## FILM CLUB FAVOURITES

Press Esc to exit full screen mode.

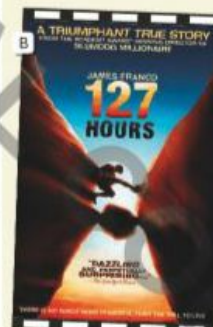
CD-2.7 MP3-51



### Sherlock Holmes

► This action-adventure film directed by Guy Ritchie takes place in London in 1891.

<sup>9</sup> Robert Downey Jr plays the role of Sherlock Holmes. He is one of the most interesting characters I've ever seen on screen. The special effects are amazing and the screenplay is excellent. It's fun, it's entertaining and Robert Downey Jr will hold your attention from beginning to <sup>15</sup> end.



### 127 Hours

► This film is based on the true story of a mountain climber, Aron Ralston, who

<sup>30</sup> falls into a canyon in Utah. He can't get out of the canyon because his arm is under a rock. Over the next five days, he thinks about his life, his friends and his family. He wants to survive. After the fifth day, he cuts off his arm. It is an inspiring film and James Franco gives a brilliant <sup>35</sup> performance as Aron Ralston.



### The Proposal

► *The Proposal* is a romantic comedy that takes place in Alaska. The plot is predictable.

<sup>35</sup> but the dialogue is amusing and the lead actors give excellent performances. Sandra Bullock plays the role of the central character. She <sup>40</sup> is Canadian and when her visa expires, she has twenty-four hours to leave the USA and the job she loves. Her American assistant, played <sup>45</sup> by Ryan Reynolds, agrees to marry her and she promises him a promotion. This is an enjoyable film.



### My Sister's Keeper

<sup>10</sup> ► This film is based on a novel by Jodi Picoult. The central character, Kate, has leukaemia. Her younger sister has numerous operations to <sup>15</sup> help her sister survive. This is a moving film about what it means to be a good parent, a good sister, a good person. The acting is brilliant, with <sup>20</sup> Cameron Diaz in the role of the mother. You'll need a big box of tissues!



### The King's Speech

► Everything about this <sup>45</sup> award-winning historical drama is perfect: the screenplay, the costumes, the settings, the soundtrack and, of course, the wonderful <sup>70</sup> performance by Colin Firth in the role of King George VI. The film is based on the true-life story of the King's speech impediment and his unusual <sup>75</sup> friendship with his Australian speech therapist. A great film.



### Let Me In

► This thriller is the story of a friendship between a lonely <sup>85</sup> young boy and a strange pale girl. The girl has a mysterious secret. The filming, the music and the performances are perfect. In some scenes, the <sup>90</sup> suspense will make you jump out of your seat. You won't forget it for a long time.

- 4 Match the words in blue in the descriptions with the underlined words with similar meanings in the reviews.

factual = true-life, true

- 5 Look at the highlighted synonyms of good that the writer uses to describe things in the reviews. Complete the table. Two words are used more than once.

Describing the ...	Synonyms of good
special effects	<u>amazing</u>
screenplay	_____
performance/acting	_____
film/drama	_____

- 6 Complete the sentences with one word in each gap.

- In *Sherlock Holmes*, the \_\_\_\_\_ effects are amazing.
- 127 Hours* takes \_\_\_\_\_ in Utah and is based \_\_\_\_\_ a novel by Aron Ralston.
- In *The Proposal*, Sandra Bullock \_\_\_\_\_ the role of the central \_\_\_\_\_.
- In *My Sister's Keeper*, Cameron Diaz \_\_\_\_\_ a brilliant performance \_\_\_\_\_ the mother.
- The King's Speech* is an \_\_\_\_\_-winning film with Colin Firth in the role of King George VI.
- Let Me In* is a thriller that will \_\_\_\_\_ your attention from beginning to end.

- 7 Think of a film that you've seen for each of the following descriptions.

- an award-winning film
- a film that held your attention from beginning to end
- a film based on a true story
- a film with amazing special effects
- a film that takes place in your country

- 8 Choose one of the films you thought of in Exercise 7. Then, in pairs, take turns to tell your partner about it. Talk about these things.

- type of film
- director
- actors
- setting
- plot
- things you liked/didn't like

### WORD STORE 3E

- 9 **CD-2.8 MP3-52** Look at WORD STORE 3E. Listen and repeat the adjectives. Then write them on the line according to how positive or negative they are.


### 3.5 Grammar

Comparative and superlative adjectives + too and enough

I can make comparisons.

- 1 **CD-2.9 MP3-53** In pairs, do the Quick Culture Quiz. Then listen and check.

**QUICK CULTURE QUIZ**



True (T) or False (F)?

- Shakespeare's play *Romeo and Juliet* isn't as long as *Hamlet*. ☐
- Mariah Carey has a better vocal range than Christina Aguilera. ☐
- The biggest music festival in the world is the Woodstock Festival in Poland. ☐
- The Palace Museum in Beijing is busier than the Musée du Louvre in Paris. ☐
- The *Harry Potter* films were more expensive to make than *The Hobbit* films. ☐

- 2 Read GRAMMAR FOCUS I. Then complete the examples with the comparative and superlative adjectives in blue in the quiz.

#### GRAMMAR FOCUS I

Comparative and superlative adjectives

	Comparative	Superlative
Short adjectives		
long	longer (than)	the longest
big	bigger (than)	the biggest
busy	busier (than)	the busiest
Long adjectives		
expensive	more expensive (than)	the most expensive
Irregular adjectives		
good	better (than)	the best
bad	worse (than)	the worst
far	further (than)	the furthest

You use **not as + adjective + as** to make negative comparisons:

*Romeo and Juliet* isn't as long as *Hamlet*. = *Hamlet* is longer than *Romeo and Juliet*.

- 3 Complete the sentences with **as**, **more** or **than**. Do you agree with the statements?

- Music downloads are cheaper than CDs.
- Jazz is not as popular as classical music.
- Live music is more exciting than recorded music.
- Lady Gaga is not as talented as Adele.
- Male actors have more interesting roles than female actors.
- The film is never as good as the book.

- 4 Complete the questions with the superlative form of the adjectives in brackets. Then, in pairs, ask and answer the questions.

What is:

- \_\_\_\_\_ (bad) song you've ever heard?
  - \_\_\_\_\_ (great) band of all time?
  - \_\_\_\_\_ (exciting) place in your area?
- Who is:
- \_\_\_\_\_ (funny) comedian you've ever seen?
  - \_\_\_\_\_ (good) TV presenter in your country?
  - \_\_\_\_\_ (intelligent) person you know?

- 5 **CD-2.10 MP3-54** Listen to Andy and Chloe deciding what film to watch. Match actors 1-5 with opinions a-e.

- Tom Cruise ☐
  - Zac Efron ☐
  - Daniel Radcliffe ☐
  - Robert Pattinson ☐
  - Kristen Stewart ☐
- a really small but gorgeous  
b OK  
c too short/not tall enough  
d too serious  
e perfect

- 6 Read GRAMMAR FOCUS II. Then complete the sentences with **too** or **not enough** and the adjectives in brackets.

#### GRAMMAR FOCUS II

too and enough

You use **too + adjective** or **not + adjective + enough** to show there is a problem with something.

Tom Cruise is too short. =  
Tom Cruise is not tall enough.

- I'm \_\_\_\_\_ (old) to watch X-rated films. You have to be eighteen. ☐
- I don't go to the cinema much - tickets are \_\_\_\_\_ (expensive). ☐
- I'm \_\_\_\_\_ (confident) to perform on the stage. ☐
- I'm \_\_\_\_\_ (young) to remember music from the 1990s! ☐
- I'm \_\_\_\_\_ (patient) to learn a musical instrument. ☐
- I don't download films. My Internet connection is \_\_\_\_\_ (fast). ☐

- 7 Tick the sentences in Exercise 6 that are true for you. Then compare with a partner.

Grammar Focus page 114

### 3.6 Speaking

Describing a photo

Describe a situation in a photo and speculate about what is happening.

- 1 In pairs, look at the photos and answer the questions.

- Who are the people?
- Where are they?
- What are they doing?



- 2 Complete sentences 1-3 in as many ways as possible with the adjectives in the box.

bored crowded empty excited  
famous friendly frightened happy  
irritated miserable nervous noisy  
proud quiet shy tired young

- (describing people) He/She is ...
- (describing feelings) He/She is feeling ...
- (describing places) It is ...

- 3 **CD-2.11 MP3-55** Listen and decide which photo the speaker is describing. Give reasons for your answer.

- 4 **CD-2.11 MP3-55** Complete the description with words and phrases from the SPEAKING FOCUS. Then listen again and check.

1 \_\_\_\_\_ a famous author signing a book for a young boy. 2 \_\_\_\_\_ there are book shelves, so 3 \_\_\_\_\_ they're in a bookshop. The author is a woman with blond hair. She's sitting behind a desk. 4 \_\_\_\_\_ friendly and she's looking at the boy. She's 5 \_\_\_\_\_ asking him what his name is so that she can write a personal message. The boy 6 \_\_\_\_\_ is wearing a blue top. I think he's about eight years old. He looks a bit shy, but 7 \_\_\_\_\_ he's very proud to meet the author of his favourite book. 8 \_\_\_\_\_, I'd love to meet my favourite author.

#### SPEAKING FOCUS

Beginning a description

In this photo, I can see/there is/there are ...  
This photo shows ...

Saying where (place)

There are ..., so I think they're in a bookshop/art gallery/at a concert, etc.

Saying where (in the photo)

in the background/in the middle/in the foreground  
on the left/on the right  
in front of/behind/next to

Speculating

He/She looks shy/bored/tired, etc.

She's probably ...

Perhaps/Maybe/I imagine/I'm sure he's very proud.

Giving your opinion

I think/I don't think ...

Personally, ...

In my opinion, ...

- 5 In pairs, take turns to describe the other two photos. Use the SPEAKING FOCUS to help you.

- 6 **CD-2.12 MP3-56** Now listen to people describing photos B and C. Are the descriptions similar to yours? How are they different?

- 7 In pairs, follow the instructions and take turns to talk about music and art. Use the SPEAKING FOCUS to help you.

Student A: Ask Student B these questions:

- What kind of music do you enjoy listening to and who is your favourite band or singer?

- Describe a time when you saw live music.

Student B: Ask Student A the following questions:

- What kind of art do you like and why?

- Describe a time when you visited a gallery or museum.

## 3.7 Writing

### An informal email/letter

*I can write to someone and thank them, give news, express sympathy or invite them somewhere.*

- What is the best or worst birthday present to give a teenage boy or girl? Discuss in pairs.
- Complete Ryan's letter to his aunt and uncle with sentences A-G.
  - You must be very disappointed.
  - It would be lovely to see you.
  - I hope you're both well.
  - I had a great time.
  - Hope to see you at the family lunch.
  - I think my painting is improving and I'm still hoping to go to art school one day.
  - It was the best thing I've ever seen.

Dear Auntie Susan and Uncle Ron,

<sup>1</sup> Thanks very much for the money for my birthday. I've bought some new paints and brushes.

<sup>2</sup> I've just come back from my school trip to London. <sup>3</sup> We did some sightseeing and saw a fantastic photography exhibition at the Portrait Gallery. We also went to the theatre and saw a play called *War Horse*. <sup>4</sup>

<sup>5</sup> I'm sorry to hear that you've failed your driving test again, Auntie Susan. <sup>6</sup> Do you think you'll take it a sixth time?

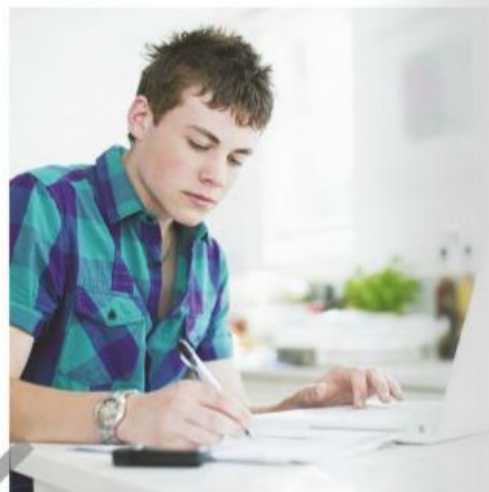
<sup>7</sup> We're having a family lunch on 15 June. <sup>8</sup> Would you like to come?

<sup>9</sup> Well, that's all for now. Thanks again for the present - it was very kind of you.

<sup>10</sup> Love,  
Ryan x

- What did Ryan do in his letter? Complete the sentences.

- He thanked his aunt and uncle for \_\_\_\_\_.
- He told them about \_\_\_\_\_.
- He said was sorry that \_\_\_\_\_.
- He invited them to \_\_\_\_\_.



- Complete the WRITING FOCUS with the words in purple in Ryan's letter.

### WRITING FOCUS

#### An informal email/letter

- Starting an email/a letter  
How are things with you? <sup>1</sup> I hope you're both well.
- Thanking somebody  
It was very kind of you to send me <sup>2</sup> very much for/Thanks again for ...
- Giving recent news  
I must tell you about <sup>3</sup> come back from ...
- Expressing sympathy  
It's a shame <sup>4</sup> to hear that ...
- Inviting somebody  
I hope you can make it <sup>5</sup> like to come?/It would be lovely to see you.
- Closing a letter/an email  
I must be going now <sup>6</sup> for now./Look forward to seeing you <sup>7</sup> to see you ...

- Complete Monica's email to her cousin Elisa with words from the WRITING FOCUS.

To: Elisa

Dear Elisa,

How are <sup>1</sup> with you? It was very <sup>2</sup> of you to invite me to stay with you in Scotland. I had a fantastic time and really enjoyed meeting your friends. I <sup>3</sup> tell you about my journey home. The weather was terrible and it was nearly midnight when my flight left! I started talking to a nice girl from my city and we are going to meet for coffee.

It's a <sup>4</sup> you can't come to visit me next month. Perhaps you can come in the summer instead. It's my eighteenth birthday in August and I'm having a big party. I hope you can <sup>5</sup> it.

I must be <sup>6</sup> now. Homework is waiting!

Look forward to <sup>7</sup> you in the summer I hope.

Bye! <sup>8</sup> now,  
Monica

- Here are some situations where you need to write an email to someone. Will you need to thank (T), express sympathy (S), give news (N) or invite (I) in your email?

- Your friend from Canada has sent you a book for your birthday.
- You're arranging to go out for a meal to celebrate your birthday.
- Your friend got low marks in his English exam.
- Your sister has just got married.
- Your friend helped you with your homework.

- Write two sentences for each of the emails in Exercise 6 using phrases from the WRITING FOCUS.

## Writing task

You recently received a letter from a friend you met at a language school in London. Read part of his email and write your reply.

I know you love music, so here's a link to my favourite music website: [www.rockstuff.abc](http://www.rockstuff.abc). I took my final English exam last month, but unfortunately, I failed! What's your news? I hope we can meet up soon.

- Write your letter in about 100 words. Include these points.

- Thank your friend for the link.
- Tell him what you liked best about the website.
- Tell him your news.
- Express sympathy for his exam result and say you're sure he'll pass next time.
- Invite him to come and see you.
- Tell him what you'll do together.

### Useful language

- Thanks so much for sending ...
- I liked ... best.
- On Wednesday I went on a school trip.
- I had my exams last week and am still waiting for my results.
- I'm going to a party next Saturday.
- I'm sorry to hear about ...
- I'm sure you will do better next time.
- Come and visit me!
- Why don't you visit me in the summer?

- Use the ideas in the WRITING FOCUS and the model to help you.

- Check.

- ✓ Have you addressed all the points in the task?
- ✓ Have you used phrases from the model, WRITING FOCUS and the Useful language box?
- ✓ Have you divided your letter into paragraphs?
- ✓ Have you used the correct spelling and punctuation?

# FOCUS REVIEW 3

## VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

### 1 Choose the odd one out in each group.

- 1 documentary western opera thriller
- 2 biography book review cookbook fantasy novel
- 3 plot gallery museum painting
- 4 album sitcom track band
- 5 songwriter chapter playwright poet
- 6 emotional enjoyable funny fantasy

### 2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in capitals.

- 1 My favourite \_\_\_\_\_ is Claude Monet. **ART**
- 2 The play at the theatre was really \_\_\_\_\_. **ENJOY**
- 3 J. K. Rowling is a very successful \_\_\_\_\_. **NOVEL**
- 4 She's a great \_\_\_\_\_. She always makes me laugh. **COMEDY**
- 5 It's the best \_\_\_\_\_ I've ever seen by a ballet dancer. **PERFORM**
- 6 I didn't like the film – the plot was \_\_\_\_\_. **ORIGINAL**

### 3 Use the prompts and the words in brackets to write sentences.

- 1 I / not do / my homework for tomorrow (yet)
- 2 they / visit / Paris / so / they / not want / go / again (already)
- 3 you / see / Quentin Tarantino's new film (yet)
- 4 I / read / a very bad review of this crime story (just)
- 5 Lottie / call / you? (yet)
- 6 my brother / watch / this comedy / ten times (already)

### 4 Complete the second sentence using the word in capitals so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Do not change the word in capitals.

- 1 I think Pink is more attractive than Lady Gaga. **AS**  
I think Lady Gaga \_\_\_\_\_ Pink.
- 2 There's too much food on my plate. I'll never eat it all! **BIG**  
This dinner \_\_\_\_\_ for me. I'll never eat it all!
- 3 My grade in Maths wasn't as good as my grade in Biology. **THAN**  
My grade in Biology \_\_\_\_\_ my grade in Maths.
- 4 This is the most we have ever spent on a trip. **EXPENSIVE**  
This is \_\_\_\_\_ we have ever been on.
- 5 I like really sweet tea. Can I have some more sugar, please? **NOT**  
My tea \_\_\_\_\_. Can I have some more sugar, please?
- 6 There is more traffic between 5 and 7 p.m. than in any other part of the day. **BUSIEST**  
\_\_\_\_\_ time for travelling is between 5 and 7 p.m.

## LANGUAGE IN USE

### 5 Choose the correct answer, A, B or C.

- 1 A: We didn't go to the cinema \_\_\_\_\_.  
B: Why not?  
A yet B since then C last week
- 2 A: What a disappointing film!  
B: Yes, the ending was so \_\_\_\_\_.  
A entertaining B moving C predictable
- 3 A: Are you in this old school photo? I can't find you.  
B: I'm in the \_\_\_\_\_, behind everyone else.  
A background B centre C foreground
- 4 A: Have you heard anything about this play?  
B: Yes, I've read the online \_\_\_\_\_.  
A roles B critics C reviews
- 5 A: His latest novel is really boring.  
B: Yes, it is \_\_\_\_\_ books.  
A less boring than his previous B not as interesting as his other C the best of his
- 6 A: What do you think of this story?  
B: \_\_\_\_\_.  
A That sounds funny. C What a funny story!  
B In my opinion, it's funny.

### 6 Read the text and choose the correct answer, A, B or C.

#### RUB MY NOSE AND GET GOOD LUCK

If you want to see attractive art, you don't necessarily need to visit an '\_\_\_\_\_ in an art gallery. In Bratislava, Slovakia, you can see bronze '\_\_\_\_\_ in the street. There are several statues in the streets of Bratislava, but one, called *Man At Work*, is the most popular and gets lots of visitors. This '\_\_\_\_\_ statue is of a man's head. The head is coming out of a hole in the ground. People say that if you touch the man's nose, you'll have good luck. Many people have '\_\_\_\_\_ done this – you can see this because his nose is shinier '\_\_\_\_\_ the rest of his head! *Man At Work* is so popular that it '\_\_\_\_\_ in travel guides about the city.



- 1 A animation B abstract painting C exhibition
- 2 A sculptors B sculptures C portraits
- 3 A best-selling B live C amusing
- 4 A just B yet C already
- 5 A more B than C that
- 6 A has appeared B used to appear C appeared

## READING

### 7 Read the texts and choose the correct answer, A, B or C.

I can't believe I'm so scared. I'm a professional singer and I have performed on stage many times. I know my songs very well. In fact, I've never forgotten any lyrics. Why is it so difficult? But it's happening again. I don't want to go on stage and sing in front of thousands of people. I've tried breathing deeply and counting to a hundred very slowly, but nothing has helped.

Oh no! They've just announced my name!

- 1 The author talks about  
A preparing for a performance.  
B a health problem during a concert.  
C her feelings before appearing on stage.

#### The experience of a lifetime

One of the greatest operas, *Turandot*, by the Italian composer Giacomo Puccini, will be on at the State Opera. It is based on the story of Calaf, who falls in love with Princess Turandot. He wants to marry her, but first he must answer three difficult questions correctly or he will die. It's a very sad and emotional story.

- Saturday 19 October – Wednesday 23 October, for five performances only
- Daily at 7.30 p.m.
- Student discounts available

Limited number of tickets – book now!

- 2 The purpose of the text is to  
A give a review of a performance.  
B encourage readers to see a performance.  
C describe what readers will see at a performance.

#### The Monkeyz

I saw this band last Saturday at the Fun Day music festival. It was the longest concert I've ever attended. They played for four hours and sang all their biggest hits, as well as some tracks from their new album. There was something for everyone – faster dance tracks, slower songs and even some jazz.

The weather wasn't good. We had weeks of blue skies and sunshine, but that all changed on Saturday. The clouds moved in and all the fans got wet. But no one really cared because it was such a fantastic show.

Comments (4)

- 3 According to the author,  
A the weather didn't spoil the fun.  
B the concert was too long.  
C not everyone liked the songs.

## SPEAKING

### 8 Look at the photos and choose the most suitable words from the box to describe them. Then, in pairs, take turns to describe the photos.

ambitious ballet room dancer easy little girl music pink professional singer teacher theatre



## WRITING

### 9 Read the writing task below. Which of these sentences do you think are good advice about how to answer the task?

- 1 You shouldn't give or ask for lots of extra information.
- 2 You should make sure you include all the points in the question.
- 3 You can write more or less than forty-five words – the length isn't really important.

You have just come back from seeing a film that your friend Matt recommended. Write an email of about 35–45 words to Matt. In your email you should:

- thank him for recommending the film
- say what you thought about it
- invite him to go to the cinema with you next week.

# 4 LIVING

Home is where the heart is.

A PROVERB

## UNIT LANGUAGE AND SKILLS

### Vocabulary:

- Show what you know – rooms and furniture
- houses and homes
- phrases with make and do
- adjective order
- places in the city and in the country

### Grammar:

- Present Perfect with for and since
- Present Continuous, be going to and will

### Listening:

- teenagers talking about their rooms

### Reading:

- descriptions of different places

### Speaking:

- making suggestions

### Writing:

- a story

## FOCUS EXTRA

- Grammar Focus page 115
- WORD STORE booklet pages 8–9
- Workbook pages 44–55 or MyEnglishLab
- MP3s – [www.english.com/focus](http://www.english.com/focus)

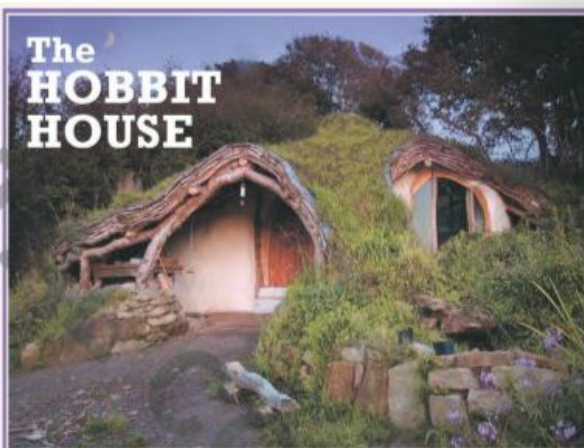
## 4.1 Vocabulary

Houses and homes • Phrases with **make** and **do**  
*I can describe houses and use phrases with make and do.*

### SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

- Think about your house and complete the task. You have five minutes.
  - List all the different rooms.
  - Put the rooms in order according to the time you spend in them.  
*I my bedroom (I spend most time in here.)*
  - List at least six items you can find in each room.
- In pairs, combine your lists. How many words for rooms and furniture did you think of altogether?

## The HOBBIT HOUSE

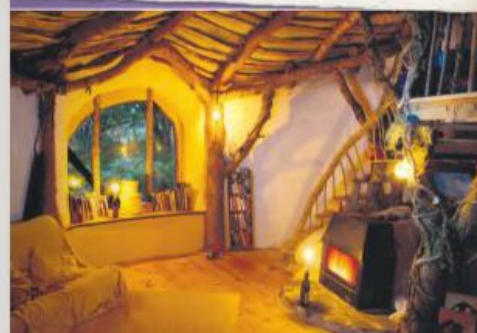


Simon Dale didn't want to live in a 'mass-produced box' on a housing estate. So he made a brave decision. He decided to build his own home in the countryside. He moved to rural Wales with his family and built a wooden eco-house. With the help of his father-in-law, a builder, he moved into a cosy new home after only four months. It only cost £3,000 to build.

The Hobbit House, as local people call it, is made of natural materials. Simon Dale and his father-in-law dug into the side of a hill and then used the mud and stone to make the walls. The frame of the house

and the floors are made from wood from the surrounding area. The design is open-plan. There is no central heating, but there's a wood-burner and solar panels on the roof which provide power for lighting, music and computing. A skylight in the roof provides lots of natural light and a pond in the front garden collects rainwater. Drinking water is from a nearby spring. There's a compost toilet and the fridge stays cool thanks to air from under the ground. Simon Dale says, 'We try to live in harmony with the natural world.' He has certainly done his best to achieve that.

- In pairs, look at the photos, read the text and answer the questions.
  - Why did Simon Dale build the Hobbit House?
  - Where did he build it?
  - How long did it take to build and how much did it cost?
  - Where did they get the materials to build it?
  - Where do they get heating, electricity, light and water from?
  - How does Simon Dale say he wants to live?
- In pairs, discuss what you like or don't like about the Hobbit House.



Go to WORD STORE 4 page 9.

### WORD STORE 4A

- Complete WORD STORE 4A with the words and phrases in red in the text. Then listen, check and repeat.
  - detached house with only one floor *bungalow*
  - house which is joined to my neighbour's house
  - house on the edge of the city
  - small traditional house in a village
  - modern house in an area with other similar houses
  - flat that is very warm and comfortable

### WORD STORE 4B

- Tick the items in WORD STORE 4B that you can see in the photos of the Hobbit House. Use your dictionary if necessary. Then listen and repeat.
- Choose words and phrases from WORD STORES 4A and 4B and put them under these headings. Add your own ideas. Then compare with a partner.

My house	My dream house

### WORD STORE 4C

- In pairs, think about the advantages and disadvantages of living in the Hobbit House. Then listen to three people talking about it. Do they mention any of your ideas?
- Complete WORD STORE 4C with the phrases in the box. Then listen, check and repeat.

a noise	the cooking	a complaint
the ironing	a mess	the gardening
the housework	dinner	the shopping
your bed	the washing	the washing-up

- Complete the questions with the correct form of **make** or **do**.

- Did you \_\_\_\_\_ your bed this morning?
- Do your neighbours ever \_\_\_\_\_ a noise?
- Do you like \_\_\_\_\_ the washing-up?
- Who \_\_\_\_\_ the cooking in your house?
- Have you ever \_\_\_\_\_ dinner for somebody?
- Where does your family usually \_\_\_\_\_ the shopping?

- In pairs, ask and answer the questions in Exercise 11.

## 4.2 Grammar

### Present Perfect with for and since

I can talk about actions that started in the past and continue until now.

- Tick the places where you have slept. What was the most unusual place? Discuss in pairs.
 

• in my bed <input type="checkbox"/>	• in a hotel <input type="checkbox"/>
• on a floor <input type="checkbox"/>	• on a train <input type="checkbox"/>
• on a couch <input type="checkbox"/>	• other <input type="checkbox"/>
- Read US TODAY. What is couchsurfing? Would you like to do it? Why?/Why not?

### US TODAY

We asked CS employee Dan about the world's largest travel community.

#### What is it?

A worldwide travel network connecting travellers with people who offer free accommodation.

#### Who is it for?

People who don't want to stay in hotels, but want to meet local people and experience new cultures.

#### How much does it cost?

Nothing! It's free.

#### How long have you worked for CS?

I've been here since it started in 2004. I've worked with people from all over the world for more than ten years. Together, we want to create a global community.

- Read the GRAMMAR FOCUS. Then complete the examples with the Present Perfect forms in blue in US TODAY.

### GRAMMAR FOCUS

#### Present Perfect with for and since

You use the Present Perfect to talk about unfinished situations that started in the past and continue until now.

You use **how long** to ask about the length of time until now.

**How long** I have been here for CS?

You use **since** when the answer is a point in time (e.g. since 1998, since last week, since I was born).

I have been here since it started in 2004.

You use **for** when the answer is a period of time (e.g. for six hours, for a few days, for a long time).

I have worked with people from all over the world for more than ten years.

- Choose for or since and complete the comments with the Present Perfect form of the verbs in brackets. Then listen and check.



### Couchsurfer

I have been (be) a member for / since three years now. For / Since I became a member, I have stayed (stay) in thirty-two countries in different types of accommodation. I have stayed (stay) in a luxury studio apartment in Manhattan, on a houseboat in Amsterdam and in a basement flat in London – all for free!

### Host

I have been (be) a couchsurfing host for / since two years now and I have already (already/meet) more than thirty people. At the moment Miki is visiting from Tokyo. I have only (only/know) her for / since a week, but I'm sure we'll remain friends. We have so much in common. Miki is happy too – she has studied (study) English for / since ten years, but she has never (never/have) the chance to speak with a native speaker before. When I show a guest around Oxford, I see my own city in a new way. For example, I have not visited (not visit) the Natural History Museum for / since I was at primary school, but I'll go there with Miki. She has been (be) here for / since nearly a week, but she has not felt (not feel) homesick because she says I make her feel at home.

- Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Use the verbs in brackets.

- I met my best friend two years ago.  
I have known (know) my best friend for two years.
- I joined this English class three months ago.  
I have been (be) in this English class for three months.
- My dad gave my mum this watch when she was forty.  
My mum has had (have) this watch for she was forty.
- I bought my last pair of trainers last Christmas.  
I have not bought (not buy) any new trainers for last Christmas.
- I had breakfast at 7 a.m.  
I have not eaten (not eat) anything for 7 a.m.
- My dad was born in our house.  
My dad has lived (live) in our house for he was born.

- Use the prompts to write sentences that are true for you. Use the Present Perfect and since or for.

- I / know / (name of your neighbour) ...  
I have known Barry for five years.
- I / live in / (name of your neighbourhood) ...
- I / like / (name of your favourite band) ...
- I / have / (make of your phone) ...
- I / be interested in / (name of a subject) ...
- my dad / have / (type of your dad's car) ...

- In pairs, write questions about the sentences in Exercise 6. Then ask and answer the questions.

- A: Who is your neighbour? B: Barry.  
A: How long have you known him? B: For five years.

Grammar Focus page 115

## 4.3 Listening

### Multiple choice

I can identify specific detail in short monologues.

- In pairs, look at the photo and discuss how different or similar the bedroom is to your own rooms. Think about:
  - the size: bigger/smaller, more/less spacious, the same
  - the decoration: more/less modern, colour of walls/curtains/carpet, posters, etc.
  - the furniture: bookcase, bed, wardrobe, desk, etc.
  - other details: more or less tidy, clothes, musical instruments, computer, etc.



### EXAM FOCUS Multiple choice

- Listen to five people talking about their rooms. Choose the correct answer A, B or C for each speaker.

#### Speaker 1

Why does the speaker spend time in his room?

- to escape from the family
- to play loud computer games
- to chat to his brothers and sisters

#### Speaker 2

The speaker's sister

- often cleans her room.
- isn't home a lot.
- chats to the speaker until late.

#### Speaker 3

What do we learn about the speaker?

- She plays an instrument.
- She has lots of parties.
- She's very creative.

#### Speaker 4

Where does the speaker usually study?

- In his room
- In the kitchen
- In the sitting room

#### Speaker 5

The speaker's friends come round because

- they like her grandmother.
- they can play loud music.
- they play computer games with her parents.

- In pairs, discuss which teenager's description is the most similar to your own situation.

- Listen to two teenagers talking about their most treasured possessions and complete the information.



#### DAFFYD

- 1 a laptop: has had it for \_\_\_\_\_, a \_\_\_\_\_ present
- 2 a guitar: has had it for \_\_\_\_\_, it belonged to his \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 a Welsh flag: feels \_\_\_\_\_ of being Welsh

#### KAREN

- 1 a collection of animals: has had them since she \_\_\_\_\_, her favourite is \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 a bedside lamp: a present from her \_\_\_\_\_, brought from \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 a collection of shells: souvenirs from \_\_\_\_\_, she collected them since she \_\_\_\_\_



- Choose the correct prepositions and try to complete the sentences about Daffyd and Karen from memory. Then listen again and check.

- Daffyd's \_\_\_\_\_ is on / next his desk.
- His \_\_\_\_\_ is on / in the corner next / next to the bookcase.
- His \_\_\_\_\_ is onto / on the wall onto / above his bed.
- Karen's \_\_\_\_\_ is on top of / on top the wardrobe.
- Karen's \_\_\_\_\_ is on / in her bedside table.
- Her \_\_\_\_\_ is in / on the bottom shelf of her bookshelves, which are opposite / in front her bed.

### PRONUNCIATION FOCUS

- Listen and repeat the words with long vowel sounds. Then write them in the correct column.

bar	blue	calm	cheap	dark
dirt	earth	floor	heat	lawn
porch	room	scene	view	work

1 /u/	2 /u/	3 /a/	4 /a/	5 /a/
				bar

- Listen, check and repeat.

### WORD STORE 4D

- Complete WORD STORE 4D. Use the adjectives in the box to finish the descriptions. Then listen, check and repeat.

## 4.4 Reading

### Matching

I can find specific detail in an article.

- 1 Underline the things in the box that you can see in photos A–E.

a canal a canyon golden sand  
a harbour a monument a mountain  
rainforest a river rocks ruins  
shallow sea water a statue

- 2 Read the texts and answer the questions.

- How big and how old is the Grand Canyon?
- What is the best way to visit the canyon today?
- How many islands are there in Venice?
- What's the most expensive way to visit Venice?
- Where in Rio is the famous statue of Christ?
- How do you get to the statue?
- Where is the Great Barrier Reef?
- Why is it a popular destination for scuba divers?
- In which country is the Lost City of Petra?
- How do tourists visit the city?

### EXAM FOCUS Matching

- 3 Read the texts again and the descriptions below. Decide which location (A–E) would be the most suitable for each person (1–3) to visit.

- Ethan wants to visit somewhere very old and a bit mysterious. He's interested in the natural world, in particular geology and rocks, but he doesn't like heights. He'd like to go somewhere he can walk round.
- Jenny wants to go somewhere hot with her husband. She likes sunbathing and he likes water sports.
- Gary and his girlfriend want to visit an exciting city where they can see lots of sights and beautiful old buildings. They don't want to pay for taxis or coach trips.

1 Ethan ☐ 2 Jenny ☐ 3 Gary ☐

- 4 Complete the questions with the words in blue in the texts.

- Is there a building or monument that \_\_\_\_\_ your city?
- Is your city a busy \_\_\_\_\_ centre?
- Where are the rich \_\_\_\_\_ in your city?
- How good is the public transport \_\_\_\_\_?
- Which parts of your country \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of tourists?
- Where can you see \_\_\_\_\_ views?

- 5 In pairs, ask and answer the questions in Exercise 4.

- 6 In pairs, complete the sentences to make them true for your country. Give reasons for your answers.

- The most awesome natural wonder is ...
- The most impressive building is ...
- The most famous square is ...
- The most popular tourist destination is ...
- The most spectacular historic ruins are ...

## FIVE PLACES TO VISIT BEFORE YOU DIE

CD 2-23 MP3-67

'Awesome' is how people describe the Grand Canyon! But words cannot describe it. You have to see it to believe it. The Grand Canyon in northwest Arizona, USA, is 446 kilometres long, 29 kilometres wide and about 1,800 metres deep. Scientists believe the canyon is 17 million years old. It is not the deepest or the longest canyon in the world. However, it is probably the most beautiful. The rocks change colour depending on the time of day, from red and orange to grey and ochre brown. The best view of the Grand Canyon is from a helicopter. But for a real adventure, you need to take a boat along the valley of the river Colorado.



THE GRAND CANYON, ARIZONA, USA



VENICE, ITALY

The 'floating city' in northeast Italy is famous for its unique beauty and wonderful architecture. The city consists of around 117 islands and 409 bridges. You can walk through the narrow streets for hours and then sit in a square and admire the impressive buildings. St Mark's is the most famous square and the central point of the city. The public transport system is fantastic. For example, the famous vaporetto (river bus) only costs about 5 euros. It takes you all the way down the Grand Canal. Alternatively, you can pay around 150 euros to do the same trip on a gondola!



THE GREAT BARRIER REEF, AUSTRALIA

It is one of the most amazing natural wonders of the world. It is located in the Coral Sea and covers 2,600 kilometres along the northeast coast of Australia. It consists of around 3,000 coral reefs and hundreds of tropical islands. It is a popular destination for scuba divers. They love the clear and shallow sea water and all the different types of fish. The golden sands of the tropical beaches attract about 1 million tourists each year.

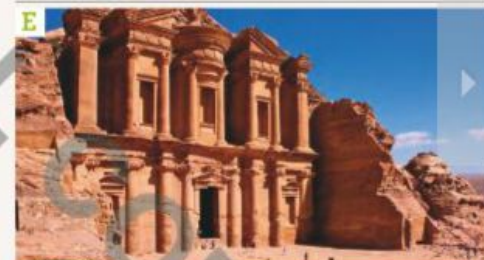
- 7 Choose one of the places you thought of in Exercise 6 and write a paragraph.

The most spectacular historic ruins in my country are at Stonehenge. Stonehenge is an ancient monument, but nobody knows exactly who built it or why. The stones change colour depending on the time of day. They are most beautiful when the sun rises or sets. Stonehenge is a popular tourist destination and millions of people come from all over the world to visit these impressive ruins.



CHRIST THE REDEEMER, RIO DE JANEIRO, BRAZIL

The statue of Christ the Redeemer is 38 metres high and dominates the city of Rio de Janeiro. It is one of the best-known sights of this lively city. When visitors go to the top of the Corcovado mountain to visit the statue, they get a breathtaking view of the city. From there you can see other famous sights: the Sugar Loaf mountain, the Atlantic Ocean, the harbour and the long sandy beaches. As you drive up the narrow road to the top of the mountain, you pass favelas (slums), rich neighbourhoods and green rainforest.



THE LOST CITY OF PETRA, JORDAN

The lost city of Petra is located in the rose-coloured mountains of southwestern Jordan. This ancient city was once a busy trading centre and the capital of the Nabataean empire. It had a population of around 20,000. They made spectacular monuments from the pink limestone rock. The city was 'lost' for centuries. Nobody knows exactly when or why people left the city. Luckily, European travellers 'found' it again in the nineteenth century. Today you can visit the spectacular ruins on foot, on horseback or by camel.

### WORD STORE 4E

- 8 Complete WORD STORE 4E. Listen and repeat the names of places in the city and in the country. Then add them to the diagram according to their distance from your school or city.

## 4.5 Grammar

Present Continuous, *be going to* and *will*  
I can talk about future arrangements, intentions  
and spontaneous decisions.

- 1 What makes a good party? In pairs, number these ideas in order of importance.

decoration ☐ food and drink ☐ furniture ☐  
lighting ☐ music ☐ people ☐ theme ☐

- 2 **CD-2.25 MP3-65** Read and listen to the conversation. Then answer the questions.

- Why is Tony having a party?
- Where and when is he having it?
- How is Luisa going to help?

Tony: I'm having a birthday party on the twenty-fifth. Can you come?

Luisa: That's next Saturday, right? Yes, that sounds great. Are you having it at home?

Tony: No, our apartment isn't big enough. I'm using my aunt and uncle's house. They're really nice – they say it's fine.

Luisa: That's kind of them – do they know how many friends you've got?

Tony: Not yet. I'm going to tell them later. We'll probably use the basement. It's huge.

Luisa: A basement? Are you going to decorate it?

Tony: I suppose so. I'm not very good at that sort of thing.

Luisa: Don't worry, I'll help you. What are you doing later?

Tony: I'm going to text everybody with the invitation now, but after that I'm free.

- 3 Read the GRAMMAR FOCUS. Complete the examples with the future forms in blue in the conversation. Then underline more examples of each future form in the conversation.

### GRAMMAR FOCUS

Present Continuous, *be going to* and *will*

• You use the **Present Continuous** for future arrangements.

You often mention a time, a date or a place.

I <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ a birthday party on the twenty-fifth.

• You use ***be going to*** for future intentions. You have already decided to do something and you tell people about it.

I <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ tell them later.

• You use ***will*** for spontaneous decisions. You often use expressions like I think I'll ..., I'll probably ... and Don't worry, I'll ...

Don't worry, I <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ help you.

- 4 **CD-2.26 MP3-70** Read the conversation and choose the correct options. Then listen and check.

Tony: Two of my friends *are helping* / *will help* me prepare the room on Saturday afternoon.  
We're going to hang / We'll hang sheets on the walls and ceiling. Then we're going to put / We're putting coloured lights everywhere. We'll have / We're having a band and a DJ from eight to midnight. I've already booked them.

Aunt: OK, I think I'll warn / I'm going to warn the neighbours!

Tony: We've decided to have a fancy dress theme – everybody *will come* / *is coming* as their favourite film character.

Uncle: Oh good, I think I'll come / I'm going to come as Captain Jack Sparrow!

Aunt: No, we'll go out / we're going out to the theatre, remember? I told you yesterday.

Uncle: I know, I was joking. Now what are you *eating* / *going to eat*?

Tony: That's all arranged. Mum *will make* / *is making* some pizzas.

Aunt: And what about the cleaning the next day?

Tony: Oh, erm ... don't worry, I'll do / I'm doing that with my friend Luisa. She won't mind!

- 5 Complete the email with the correct future form of the verbs in brackets.

Hi Amy,  
You know I <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (move) house next week. Well, I've decided that I <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (have) a house-warming party in the new house. The theme is Superheroes, so I <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (dress up) as Batman. You know my mum's a fantastic cook, so she <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (make) four types of pizza. I think everybody <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (like) that. I'm not sure about the music. I think I <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (get) a DJ and ask him to play lots of dance music.

- 6 Imagine you are responsible for organising an end-of-term party at your school. In pairs, follow the instructions to plan the party.

- Make some decisions about location, food and drink, music, decoration, theme, etc.
- Write an email to the class to explain your ideas. Use all three future forms in your email.
- As a class, decide whose party ideas are best.

Grammar Focus page 115

## 4.6 Speaking

### Making suggestions

I can make and respond to suggestions.

- 1 Imagine you are visiting London. In pairs, discuss which of these activities you would like to do and why.

**SIX OF THE BEST THINGS TO DO IN LONDON**



**London by speed boat**

- Seven days a week, all year
- Suitable for all ages!
- £35 for fifty minutes



**Shopping**

- Oxford Street shops: Mon–Fri: 8.30 a.m.–9 p.m., Sun: 11.30 a.m.–6 p.m.
- Camden Market: clothes, music, souvenirs, 10 a.m.–6 p.m. daily



**The London Eye**

Get the best view of London!

- 10 a.m.–9 p.m. daily
- Adult: £19
- 15 and under: £10



**The London Dungeon**

Prepare to be scared!

- ninety-minute tours: £20
- 10 a.m.–6 p.m., seven days a week



**IMAX cinema**

Watch the latest films in 3D for £15! You'll feel like you're in the film!



**Madame Tussaud's**

Come and see the Royal Family!

- 9 a.m.–6 p.m. daily
- Adult: £30 – save fifty percent when you book online!

- 2 **CD-2.27 MP3-71** Listen. What do Marcus and Ann decide to do? Which activities do they reject and why?

- 3 **CD-2.27 MP3-71** Read the SPEAKING FOCUS. Then listen again and underline the phrases you hear.

### SPEAKING FOCUS

#### Making suggestions

Do you fancy (going) ...?  
Let's (go) ...  
How about (going) ...?  
We could (go) ...  
(I think) we should (go) ...  
What about (going) ...?  
Why don't we (go) ...?

#### Agreeing with suggestions

(That's a) good/great idea!  
(That) sounds good/great!  
Why not!

#### Disagreeing with suggestions

(I'm sorry) I'm not keen on ...  
I don't really like ...  
I'd rather (go) ...  
I'm not sure about that.  
Let's (go) ... instead.

- 4 **CD-2.28 MP3-72** Complete the conversation with words from the SPEAKING FOCUS. Then listen and check.

A: Do you fancy <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ to the cinema tonight?

B: That's <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ good idea! What do you want to see?

A: The new film with Jennifer Aniston.

B: Oh no, I'm not <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ on romantic comedy. I'd <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ see an action film.

A: OK, let's see the new James Bond <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.

B: Great. How <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ having a burger before we go?

A: Why <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_? We <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ try that new burger bar in town.

- 5 You are planning a day out in Edinburgh. Look at the tourist information below. In pairs, follow the instructions to agree a plan for your day. Use the SPEAKING FOCUS to help you.

A: Suggest an activity for the morning.

B: Agree and suggest something for the afternoon.

A: Disagree and suggest something different for the afternoon.

B: Disagree and suggest something else for the afternoon.

A: Agree and suggest something for the evening.

B: Agree.

### Scotland



National Museum of Scotland

10 a.m.–5 p.m.

Botanic Gardens

10 a.m.–6 p.m.

Climb a hill to get great views of the city

Two hours to climb up

Visit Edinburgh Castle

9.30 a.m.–5 p.m.

Comedy at Comedy Club

8.30 p.m.–midnight

Ghost tour: Dark secrets of Old Edinburgh

3 p.m.

Learn to do Scottish dancing

7 p.m.–midnight

Eat seafood in waterfront restaurants

7 p.m.–midnight

## 4.7 Writing

### A story

*I can write a story about an event on holiday.*

- In pairs, take turns to tell your partner the last three places you've been to on holiday and three places you'd like to go to in the future.
- Choose one of the places you've been to and tell your partner something interesting that happened while you were there.  
*I went to Paris. While we were there, a film company was making a film and we watched the actors. It was very interesting.*
- Read the story and choose the best title, A, B or C.  
A An interesting day on holiday  
B A holiday friend  
C A frightening event on holiday

We were on holiday near the sea and one morning I decided to take my dog, Betsy, for a walk. I took the path to the beach because Betsy loves to go swimming. The water was much too cold for me!

When we got there, Betsy played in the water and I sat down to read my book. I completely forgot about Betsy.

Suddenly, I heard a cry and I looked up. There was a boy on the beach and he was pointing at something in the water. It was Betsy. She was in trouble.

The boy jumped into the water and swam out. When he came back, he had Betsy in his arms and he was smiling. She was all right!

The boy's name was Tommy and since then we've become great friends.

- Cover the story. Try to remember the different events and note them down. Then read the story again and check the order in which they happened.

- Complete the WRITING FOCUS with the words in purple in the story.

### WRITING FOCUS

#### A story

- Set the scene.  
It was early in the morning./We were visiting my cousins./I was on my way to school./It was a lovely evening for a walk.
- Use some short dramatic sentences:  
It was Betsy./?
- Use exclamation marks to show surprise or excitement.  
It was too cold for me!/?/What a surprise!
- Use adverbs to add interest.  
suddenly/
- Use linkers to join parts of sentences.  
and/but/so/

- Complete the sentences with your own ideas.

- I was asleep in bed when suddenly, ...
- Although it was raining, we ...
- We went to Spain because ...
- We had just arrived at the airport when ...
- While I was looking for our cases, ...

- Put the sentences in order to make a story.

- Last summer I was on holiday in the countryside with my best friend, Jake.
- It finally did, but we were completely wet.
- After walking for three hours, we stopped for lunch.
- It got dark and started to rain heavily.
- We hid under a big tree and waited for the rain to stop.
- We were having lunch when suddenly, the weather changed.
- We couldn't wait to get back and have some warm tea and dry clothes.
- The weather was fantastic and we went hiking.
- I will never go hiking again without checking the weather forecast first!

- In pairs, read the opening sentence of a story and think of a story that could follow it. Use the questions to help you.

When I got on the bus, it was very crowded and I couldn't find a seat.

- Where were you?
- When were you there?
- Who were you with?
- What was the weather like?
- What happened?
- What could you see?
- What could you hear?
- How did you feel?
- What did you do next?
- How did it end?

- Use the questions in Exercise 7 to write a story ending with this sentence.

At last it was over and I breathed a sigh of relief!

## Writing task

Your teacher has asked you to write a story. Your story must begin with this sentence.

*I was sunbathing on the beach when something cold touched my back.*

- Write your story in about 100 words. Remember to:

- give your story a title.
- make your story interesting for the reader.
- give your story a strong ending.

### Useful language

- It was the first/second day of our holiday.
- When/While ...
- Suddenly, ...
- After that, ...
- I was completely surprised!
- I finally realised ...
- What a relief!/What a nightmare!
- In the end, ...

- Use the ideas in the WRITING FOCUS and the model to help you.

- Check.

- ✓ Have you used the correct tenses to tell your story?
- ✓ Have you made it interesting?
- ✓ Have you divided your story into paragraphs?
- ✓ Have you used adverbs, adjectives and exclamations?
- ✓ Have you checked your spelling and punctuation?

# FOCUS REVIEW 4

## VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

- 1 Complete the sentences with the words in the box. There are two extra words.

accommodation beach bungalow centre  
estate heating light transport

- Their house is cold – it doesn't have any central \_\_\_\_\_.
- It's quicker to travel around the city by public \_\_\_\_\_ than by car.
- What a bright room! There's so much natural \_\_\_\_\_.
- My family didn't live in this house when I was young. I grew up on a housing \_\_\_\_\_.
- Singapore is an important trading \_\_\_\_\_ in Asia. That's why the port there is so big.
- I need a holiday! I'd love to just spend a week relaxing on a tropical \_\_\_\_\_.

- 2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in capitals.

- I love living in this \_\_\_\_\_ NEIGHBOUR.
- The Eiffel Tower is probably the most popular tourist \_\_\_\_\_ in Paris. ATTRACT
- I bought the red sofa, not the blue one. I hope I've made the right \_\_\_\_\_! DECIDE
- Our neighbours play loud music nearly every night. We've made several \_\_\_\_\_ COMPLAIN
- The room was open-plan with \_\_\_\_\_ stairs leading up to the next floor. WOOD
- I don't like \_\_\_\_\_ I plant lots of flowers, but they never grow! GARDEN

- 3 Complete the second sentence using the word in capitals so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Do not change the word in capitals.

- They moved to Paris in 2013. LIVED  
They \_\_\_\_\_ 2013.
- Liz became a doctor more than ten years ago. WORKED  
Liz \_\_\_\_\_ as a doctor for more than ten years.
- They last saw Paul in January. SINCE  
They \_\_\_\_\_ January.
- When did you first meet Karen? KNOWN  
How \_\_\_\_\_ Karen?
- I stopped playing football six months ago. FOR  
I \_\_\_\_\_ six months.
- When did you dye your hair red? HAD  
How \_\_\_\_\_ red hair?

- 4 Complete the sentences with the correct future forms of the verbs in brackets.

- Are you moving house on Saturday? I \_\_\_\_\_ (help) you if you like.
- I'm sorry I can't come. I \_\_\_\_\_ (work) this evening.
- We \_\_\_\_\_ (meet) on Friday night, but we still don't know where exactly.
- 'Was that the doorbell?' 'Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_ (answer) it.'
- 'Shall we go out?' 'No, I \_\_\_\_\_ (do) the washing and the ironing this evening.'

## LANGUAGE IN USE

- 5 Choose the correct answer, A, B or C.

- A: What are your neighbours like?  
B: We haven't got any close neighbours. We live in a \_\_\_\_\_ house in the countryside.  
A terraced  
B semi-detached  
C detached
- A: Let's go to the theatre on Friday.  
B: \_\_\_\_\_  
A: OK, let's see the new Batman film, then.  
A Sounds good.  
B I'd rather go to the theatre.  
C I'm not sure about that.
- A: How long have you lived here?  
B: \_\_\_\_\_  
A In 2010.  
B Since 2010.  
C A few years ago.
- A: Do you fancy going on the London Eye?  
B: \_\_\_\_\_  
A I'll never forget the views.  
B Good idea – the views are great.  
C In my opinion, the views are cool.
- A: What's so special about their garden?  
B: It's very big. There's even a \_\_\_\_\_ with some fish in it.  
A path  
B porch  
C pond
- A: Have you got any plans for the weekend?  
B: We've just decided that we \_\_\_\_\_ a fancy dress party.  
A are going to have  
B will have  
C are having

- 6 Choose the correct answer, A, B or C, to complete both sentences.

- I'll \_\_\_\_\_ the dinner. What would you like?  
Can you tidy your room and \_\_\_\_\_ your bed, please?  
A do B make C choose
- Don't be nervous in the exam. Just \_\_\_\_\_ your best.  
I'm too tired to \_\_\_\_\_ the shopping today.  
A make B be C do
- I love my grandma's house. I really feel \_\_\_\_\_ home there.  
My grandpa is good \_\_\_\_\_ repairing things.  
A in B at C to
- Please use the \_\_\_\_\_ door to get to the garden.  
Will you bring me something \_\_\_\_\_ from your trip?  
A back B return C behind
- The person on the left of the photo is my uncle. He's \_\_\_\_\_ next to my aunt.  
This is Mike's favourite place in the \_\_\_\_\_ room – next to the wood-burner.  
A right B living C sitting

## LISTENING

- 7 **CD-2.29 MP3-73** Listen to a teacher talking to some students on a coach trip. Complete the sentences with a word or short phrase.

- The students are going to visit \_\_\_\_\_ House.
- They may be able to see deer and wild \_\_\_\_\_ during their journey.
- Arrival time is \_\_\_\_\_.
- During the tour of the house they will hear a \_\_\_\_\_ story about a member of the family that lived there.
- The teacher advises the students to find a lovely \_\_\_\_\_ in the gardens.
- The day trip will finish at \_\_\_\_\_.



## SPEAKING

- 8 A friend of yours is going on a beach holiday for two weeks. In pairs, talk about the things he or she will need there and decide which are the most important things to take.



## WRITING

- 9 Read the writing task. Number sentences a–d in the order you think they should appear in the blog entry.

- Bath is not a very big city, but it's a lovely place.
- Unfortunately, we missed our train back to London.
- I would recommend visiting the Roman Baths.
- Last month we went on a class trip to Bath.

Recently you have been on a school trip in a big city in your country. Write a blog entry of about 100 words, sharing your impressions of the trip. In your blog entry you should:

- explain which city you visited and when
- give your opinion about the city, giving reasons
- recommend some sights to see there
- describe a problem you had on the trip and how it was resolved.

# 5 SCHOOL

Tell me and I forget, teach me  
and I may remember,  
involve me and I learn.

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN (1706–1790),  
A US PRESIDENT

## UNIT LANGUAGE AND SKILLS

### Vocabulary:

- Show what you know – school subjects
- phrasal verbs
- education
- phrases with get
- word families

### Grammar:

- First Conditional
- relative clauses

### Listening:

- a conversation about exams
- a talk about getting into university

### Reading:

- a text on charity schools

### Speaking:

- giving an opinion
- agreeing and disagreeing

### Writing:

- an email/a letter of enquiry

## FOCUS EXTRA

- Grammar Focus page 116
- WORD STORE booklet pages 10–11
- Workbook pages 56–67 or MyEnglishLab
- MP3s – www.english.com/focus

## 5.1 Vocabulary

Education • Phrasal verbs • Phrases with get  
*I can talk about schools in different countries.*

### SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

- 1 In pairs, discuss where you normally study the subjects in the box in your country. Put them under the appropriate heading. Some subjects may go in more than one group

Architecture	Design and Technology	Engineering
English	Geography	Law
Physical Education (PE)	Reading	Science
		Writing

primary school	secondary school	university
----------------	------------------	------------

- 2 What other subjects do you study at secondary school? In pairs, talk about your favourite subjects and why you like them.

- 3 In a recent survey, Finland and South Korea came top of the list of the best state schools in the world. Look at the photos from the two countries. In pairs, discuss these points about them.

- the classrooms
- the students
- the atmosphere



- 4 Ji-min is a South Korean student. Read the text about her school day. Are the statements true (T) or false (F)?

- 1 Ji-min has to wear a school uniform. ☐
- 2 She wears trainers in school. ☐
- 3 She studies eleven subjects including PE, Music and Art. ☐
- 4 She wants to study English abroad. ☐
- 5 She always goes to bed before midnight. ☐

- 5 Replace the underlined words and phrases in the questions with the correct form of the phrasal verbs in red in the text. Then answer the questions.

- 1 What time does Ji-min get out of bed?  
*What time does Ji-min get up?*
- 2 Is she friendly with all her classmates?  
*Is she friendly with all her classmates?*
- 3 Why doesn't she see her classmates outside school?  
*Why doesn't she meet up with them outside school?*
- 4 What does she remove and what does she start wearing when she gets to school?  
*What does she take off and what does she put on when she gets to school?*
- 5 Does she often continue studying after midnight?  
*Does she often go on studying after midnight?*
- 6 What does she have to do to get a place at university?  
*What does she have to do to get into university?*



Ji-min is a high school student in Seoul, South Korea. She gets up at 6.30 a.m., eats a quick breakfast of rice and seaweed soup, gets dressed and walks to school with her friends. She gets on with all her classmates, but she doesn't meet up with them outside school because she's too busy with her studies.

Ji-min wears exactly the same clothes as the other girls in her school because school uniform is compulsory. When she gets to school, she takes off her shoes and puts on a pair of slippers.

Ji-min has an extremely demanding timetable. She studies eleven subjects, but she doesn't have time for non-academic subjects, so she has dropped PE, Music and Art. English is her favourite subject and she's hoping to go to Australia in the summer and do a course in English.

She has classes from 9 a.m. to 3 p.m. every day and after school she has extra lessons in a private academy. She has to do lots of Maths exercises and learn long lists of English vocabulary by heart. It can be quite boring, but she never skips a lesson because her parents pay a lot of money to send her to the academy. Sometimes she doesn't get home until after 10 p.m.

After dinner, she does her homework. When she has to revise for a test, she often carries on studying until 1 or 2 a.m. Of course, when it gets late, she gets tired, but she knows that if she wants to get into university and get a good job, she has to work hard, get good marks and pass all her exams. She wants to do English at university.

Go to WORD STORE 5 page 11.

## WORD STORE 5A

- 6 **CD-2.30 MP3-74** Complete WORD STORE 5A with the base form of the phrasal verbs in red in the text. Then listen, check and repeat.

- 7 Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from Word Store 5A.

- 1 I \_\_\_\_\_ my big sister's friends. They all like me!
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ your coat – it's hot in here.
- 3 Would you like to \_\_\_\_\_ me and my friends at the weekend, Jeff?
- 4 Boys, \_\_\_\_\_ your hats before you go out – it's cold outside!
- 5 What time do you \_\_\_\_\_ at the weekend, Fiona? Do you like staying in bed then?
- 6 Sally is hoping to \_\_\_\_\_ Manchester University next year to study History.

## WORD STORE 5B

- 8 **CD-2.31 MP3-75** Listen to an interview with Beni, a Finnish student. Write three ways in which their school days are similar and four ways in which they are different.

- 9 **CD-2.32 MP3-76** Complete WORD STORE 5B with the correct form of the underlined words and phrases in the text.

- 10 Do you prefer Ji-min's or Beni's school day? Discuss in pairs.

## WORD STORE 5C

- 11 **CD-2.33 MP3-77** Complete WORD STORE 5C with the base form of the highlighted phrases with get from the text. Then listen, check and repeat.

- 12 Complete the sentences with the correct form of get and your own ideas. Then compare with a partner.

- 1 I usually \_\_\_\_\_ to school at \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 Yesterday I \_\_\_\_\_ home from school at \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 I rarely \_\_\_\_\_ good marks in \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 I think I'm \_\_\_\_\_ better at \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 I \_\_\_\_\_ tired if I study after \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 I'd like to \_\_\_\_\_ a job as a \_\_\_\_\_.

## 5.2 Grammar

### First Conditional

I can use the *First Conditional* to talk about the possible results of an action.

- 1 Read UK TODAY. What is a gap year? Would you like to do a gap year? Why?/Why not?

### UK TODAY

Did you know that about ten percent of students in the UK do a gap year between leaving school and going to university or college?

**What do they do?**

• travel abroad • go backpacking • do voluntary work

**Where do they go?**

• Africa • Southeast Asia  
• Australia and New Zealand • South America

**How much does it cost?**

usually about £4,000

- 2 CD-2.34 MP3-76 Look at the photo of Ricky's parents above and read the sentences. Who is in favour of Ricky doing a gap year and who is against? Listen and check.

- 3 Read the GRAMMAR FOCUS. Then complete the examples with the First Conditional forms in blue in Exercise 2.

### GRAMMAR FOCUS

#### First Conditional

You use the *First Conditional* to predict the future result of a possible action.

action → future result  
if + Present Simple, will/won't + verb

If he <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ to South America next year,  
he <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ to university the year after.

If he *doesn't go* to university, he *won't get* a decent job.

You can put the *if* clause before or after the main clause.  
He'll waste a year if he goes travelling.

- 4 CD-2.34 MP3-76 Match the sentence halves to make sentences from the conversation. Then listen again and check.

- 1 If Ricky doesn't go to university this year, ☐
- 2 He'll get a lot out of it ☐
- 3 He'll do bungee jumps and get a tattoo ☐
- 4 If he goes away on his own, ☐
- 5 If he doesn't do anything on his own, ☐

- a if he does a gap year.
- b he'll never go.
- c he'll get into trouble.
- d he'll never be independent.
- e if he goes to South America.



- 5 CD-2.35 MP3-79 What other reasons might Ricky have for going to South America? Discuss. Then listen and check your ideas.

- 6 CD-2.35 MP3-79 Complete the sentences from Ricky and Emily's conversation. Then listen again and check.

- 1 He thinks if I \_\_\_\_\_ (go) travelling, I \_\_\_\_\_ (not go) to university when I come back.
- 2 If I \_\_\_\_\_ (tell) them the truth, they definitely \_\_\_\_\_ (not let) me go.
- 3 You \_\_\_\_\_ (not learn) any Spanish if you \_\_\_\_\_ (visit) her!
- 4 If my dad \_\_\_\_\_ (not agree), I \_\_\_\_\_ (not be) able to go.
- 5 If your mum \_\_\_\_\_ (think) it's a good idea, she \_\_\_\_\_ (convince) your dad.

- 7 In groups of three, use the prompts to role play a conversation about a gap year. Student A is the student, Student B is the positive parent and Student C is the negative parent.

A (student's wish)	B (positive parent)	C (negative parent)
1 live abroad	new culture	miss friends
2 join a band	have a lot of fun	no schoolwork
3 part-time job	earn money	get up early

A: I want to live abroad.

B: Great! If you live abroad, you'll learn about a new culture.

C: Oh dear! If you live abroad, you'll miss all your friends.

Grammar Focus page 116

## 5.3 Listening

### True/False

I can identify specific detail in a conversation.

- 1 Read the tips for dealing with exam stress. Which tips do you usually follow? Can you add any more tips?

**Get rid of exam stress!**

- ☐ Create a revision schedule – and follow it!
- ☐ Don't get exhausted – get plenty of sleep.
- ☐ Study in a group from time to time.
- ☐ Be positive – imagine yourself passing the exam.
- ☐ Take regular breaks – do things you enjoy.
- ☐ Remember, it's only an exam. You won't die if you fail!

- 2 CD-2.36 MP3-80 Listen to Grace and Tom talking about exams. Tick the tips in Exercise 1 that Grace mentions.

- 3 Read statements 1–6 in the EXAM FOCUS. Match the underlined words and phrases with the words and phrases in the box.

alone	4	enjoy yourself	<input type="checkbox"/>
marks	<input type="checkbox"/>	learn by heart	<input type="checkbox"/>
nervous	<input type="checkbox"/>	relax	<input type="checkbox"/>

### EXAM FOCUS True/False

- 4 CD-2.36 MP3-80 Listen again. Are the statements true (T) or false (F)?

- 1 Tom wants to memorise fifty French verbs tonight. ☐
- 2 Tom doesn't usually get good grades at school. ☐
- 3 Grace thinks Tom will get sick if he doesn't take it easy. ☐
- 4 Grace thinks Tom should spend less time on his own. ☐
- 5 Grace doesn't get stressed about exams. ☐
- 6 Grace tells Tom to go out and have a good time. ☐

- 5 Do you have to take an entrance exam to get into university in your country? Read the information about British universities. Are the missing words nouns or numbers?

### HOW TO GET A PLACE AT

## University in Britain



- 1 Apply for a place at university when you're in your last year of secondary school: Year \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 You can apply to \_\_\_\_\_ universities.
- 3 To get into university, you have to get good \_\_\_\_\_ in three or four 'A' levels.
- 4 To get into Oxford or Cambridge university, you have to take an entrance \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 Last year \_\_\_\_\_ students applied for 400,000 university places.
- 6 You have to pay university tuition fees of up to £\_\_\_\_\_ a year.

\*A levels = Advanced level exams. Students usually do A levels at eighteen in the UK.



- 6 CD-2.37 MP3-81 Listen and complete the text in Exercise 5.

### PRONUNCIATION FOCUS

- 7 CD-2.38 MP3-82 Listen and choose the number you hear. Then listen again and repeat.

a 15.1	50.1	d 18.18	80.18
b 170	117	e 14,440	40,414
c 13,990	30,919	f 660,000	616,000

- 8 Write six similar numbers. Then, in pairs, take turns to dictate them to your partner. Check your partner's answers.

### WORD STORE 5D

- 9 CD-2.39 MP3-83 Look at WORD STORE 5D. Listen and repeat the phrases with get. Then write example sentences with the phrases.

## 5.4 Reading

### True/False

I can find specific details in an article.



Afghan girls at the secondary school in Afghanistan



mountains in Pakistan

# The man who moves MOUNTAINS

by Louis Stevenson

CD-2.40 MP3-B4

Greg Mortenson hates to be called a hero, but in the mountains of Pakistan and Afghanistan, that is what people call him. He has helped them to build more than sixty schools and this has changed the lives of many young people, especially the girls. But what first brought a white American man to this **remote** part of the world where tourists rarely go?

Greg Mortenson was born in the United States, but <sup>10</sup>grew up in Africa, where his parents were teachers. His hobby was mountain climbing. He climbed his first mountain, Mount Kilimanjaro, when he was only eleven. Many years later, when his younger sister died suddenly, he decided to climb <sup>15</sup>Pakistan's K2 in her memory. K2 is the second highest mountain in the world. He didn't reach the **summit** of K2 and after seventy-eight days at high altitude, he was exhausted. On his way back he got lost and eventually, unable to walk properly, <sup>20</sup>he stumbled into the tiny village of Korphe.

The villagers looked after him and nursed him back to health. He soon realised how poor these people were. When he asked to see the village school, they took him to the village square. But <sup>25</sup>there was no school – instead, the children were sitting on the ground outside, without a teacher, writing in the sand with sticks.

He could see that the children were thirsty for knowledge and were doing their best to learn, <sup>30</sup>even in such difficult conditions. So he promised to return and build a school for them.

Back in America he started a programme called Pennies for Pakistan. School children asked their friends and families to **donate** pennies and the pennies became dollars. After three years of <sup>35</sup>fundraising, he went back to Korphe.

The villagers were amazed when he **kept his promise** and built Korphe School for Girls. It was a simple building with eight classrooms and <sup>40</sup>a small playground. Most of the girls who attend the school will be the first **literate** women in their families. Their mothers never had the opportunity to learn to read and write. He explains that it is important to provide an education for girls. In the <sup>45</sup>developing world, girls often get married at the age of twelve and have children by fifteen. But if a girl stays in school, it makes a big difference to her life – she'll marry later, have fewer and healthier children; she can earn an income and **invest** in her <sup>50</sup>family. Greg Mortenson likes to quote an African proverb: 'If you educate a boy, you educate an individual. But if you educate a girl, you educate a community.'

Greg Mortenson with Sitara school children



- Look at the photos and the title of the text. Where do you think the people are and what do you think the text is about?
- Read the text and check your ideas in Exercise 1. Why does Greg Mortenson think it is important to educate girls in developing countries?
- Look at the words in blue in the text. Underline words or phrases around them that help you understand the meaning of those you don't know. For example:
  - Lines 6–8: But what first brought a white American man to this **remote** part of the world where tourists rarely go?
  - Lines 15–17: K2 is the second highest mountain in the world. He didn't **reach** the **summit** of K2...
- Match the words in blue in the text with the definitions.
  - far away or isolated – **remote**
  - top of a mountain – **summit**
  - able to read – \_\_\_\_\_
  - give money to charity – \_\_\_\_\_
  - put money into – \_\_\_\_\_
  - collecting money for a particular purpose – \_\_\_\_\_
  - did what he said he would do – \_\_\_\_\_
  - almost fell – \_\_\_\_\_

### EXAM FOCUS True/False

- 5 Read the text again. Are statements 1–6 true (T) or false (F)?

- Greg Mortenson is a hero to people in the mountains of Pakistan and Afghanistan. ☐
- It took him seventy-eight days to climb to the top of K2. ☐
- He was very healthy when he first arrived in Korphe. ☐
- The people of Korphe were surprised when Greg came back. ☐
- Most of the mothers in Korphe can't read. ☐
- Greg thinks that if a girl stays in school, she'll have more children. ☐

- 6 **CD-2.41 MP3-B5** Listen to a conversation about how Pennies for Peace began. Complete the sentences with the numbers in the box. Then listen again and check.

1	6	100	580	1995
12,000	62,340	100,000		

- Greg Mortenson started the charity in \_\_\_\_\_.
- He needed \$\_\_\_\_\_ to build a school.
- He wrote \_\_\_\_\_ letters to famous people.
- He got \_\_\_\_\_ reply with a cheque for \$\_\_\_\_\_.
- His mother's elementary school collected \_\_\_\_\_ pennies in \_\_\_\_\_ weeks.
- The charity has collected more than \$\_\_\_\_\_.
- Imagine you want to collect money for a charity at your school. In pairs, choose a charity and think of three ways to raise money for it.

We can sell cakes at school.

### WORD STORE 5E

- 8 **CD-2.42 MP3-B6** Complete WORD STORE 5E. Add verbs to the table. Mark the stress. Then listen, check and repeat.

## 5.5 Grammar

### Relative clauses

I can use relative clauses to give more information.

- 1 Read an extract from *The British Students' Manifesto*. How is this school similar or different to your school?

The school that we'd like is a school which is for everybody, with boys and girls who are from all backgrounds and abilities, a place where we don't compete against each other, but just do our best.

- 2 Read the GRAMMAR FOCUS. Then complete the rules with the relative pronouns in blue in the extract.

### GRAMMAR FOCUS

#### Relative clauses

- You use **who** or **that** for people.
- You use **where** or **that** for things.
- You use **which** to refer to a place.

The relative pronoun usually comes immediately after the person, thing or place it refers to. You can leave out the relative pronoun when it comes before a noun or a pronoun. The school (that) we'd like is for everybody.

- 3 Read more of the *The British Students' Manifesto* and choose the correct options. Then underline the nouns in the text that each relative pronoun refers to.

### The British Students' Manifesto

We, the school students of Britain, have a voice.

## THIS IS WHAT WE SAY

The school that we'd like is:

**A beautiful school** *where / that* the classrooms are uncluttered and the walls are brightly coloured.

**A comfortable school** with sofas and beanbags, cushions on the floors, tables *where / that* don't scrape our knees and quiet rooms *where / which* we can chill out.

**A light school** with huge windows *that / where* let the sunshine in and blinds *who / which* keep out the sun when we want to watch something on a screen.



- 4 Complete the definitions of words from the text with relative pronouns. Then tick the sentences where you can leave out the relative pronoun.

- An uncluttered classroom is a classroom \_\_\_\_\_ is tidy with no unnecessary things in it. ☐
- A beanbag is a large cushion \_\_\_\_\_ forms a comfortable shape when you sit on it. ☐
- A person \_\_\_\_\_ scrapes their knees may get small cuts. ☐
- Chill out is an informal expression \_\_\_\_\_ means 'relax'. ☐
- Blinds are like curtains \_\_\_\_\_ you use to keep out the light. ☐
- A swipe card is a plastic card \_\_\_\_\_ works like a key and lets you in or out. ☐
- A rigid timetable is a timetable \_\_\_\_\_ you can't change. ☐
- A relevant school is a school \_\_\_\_\_ lessons are directly connected with real life. ☐

- 5 In groups of three, prepare a group manifesto about your ideas for a perfect school. Think about:

- classrooms and study areas
- school uniforms
- gardens and sports grounds
- canteen
- equipment and technology

- 6 Present your group's manifesto to the rest of the class.

Grammar Focus page 116



**A safe school** with swipe cards for the school gate, anti-bully alarms, first aid classes, and someone *where / that* we can talk to about our problems.

**A flexible school** without rigid timetables or exams, without compulsory homework, *where / who* we can follow our own interests and spend more time on the subjects *who / which* we enjoy.

**A relevant school** *who / where* we learn through experience, experiments and exploration, with field trips to historic sites and other places of interest.

**A school which is for everybody**, with boys and girls who are from all backgrounds and abilities, a place where we don't compete against each other, but just do our best.

The British Students' Manifesto was the result of a nationwide survey of over 15,000 students in England and Wales.

## 5.6 Speaking

### Giving an opinion • Agreeing and disagreeing

I can give opinions, and agree or disagree with other's opinions.

- 1 In pairs, think of three reasons why some students choose to leave school early and not go to university.



- 2 **CD-2.43 MP3-87** Listen to a conversation between Ed and Lisa. Look at the statements. Do Ed and Lisa agree (A) or disagree (D) about each statement?

	Ed	Lisa
1 Nick should leave school if he wants to be an actor.		
2 He doesn't need qualifications.		
3 He might need to get a proper job.		
4 Nick's good-looking and talented.		
5 He should do his degree first.		

- 3 **CD-2.43 MP3-87** Listen again and number the expressions in the order you hear them.

### SPEAKING FOCUS

#### Giving an opinion

- I think he ... ☐
- I don't think it's ... ☒
- Personally, I think ... ☐
- I really believe ... ☐
- In my opinion, ... ☐
- If you ask me, ... ☐

#### Agreeing

- I couldn't agree more. ☐
- That's a good point. ☐

#### Disagreeing politely

- I see what you mean, but ... ☐
- That's true, but ... ☐
- I'm not so sure. ☐

#### Disagreeing

- I totally disagree! ☐
- Oh come on! That's nonsense. ☐

- 4 Choose the correct options.

- A: What do you think about single-sex schools?

B: I don't think / Personally, I think they're a good idea. It isn't normal to separate boys and girls.
- A: If you ask me, I think we get too much homework.

B: I'm not so sure. / I couldn't agree more. I never have time to do sport or relax in the evenings.
- A: I don't think my pronunciation is very good.

B: I really believe / I see what you mean, but if you practise, I'm sure you'll improve.
- A: I think the food in the school canteen is too expensive.

B: Oh come on! That's nonsense. / That's a good point. If you go to a restaurant in town, you'll pay much more.
- A: In my opinion, it's a waste of time going to university – I want to get a job and earn some money.

B: I totally disagree. / I couldn't agree more. If you go to university, you'll get a much better job.

- 5 In pairs, discuss the subjects in the box.

doing sport at school  
leaving school at sixteen  
having extra lessons after school  
wearing a uniform doing a gap year

- A: Ask what your partner thinks.  
B: Give your opinion.  
A: Agree or disagree and say why.

- 6 Your school has received a donation of €5,000. Photos A, B and C show three possible ways your school could spend the money. In pairs, follow the instructions and present your choice to the class. Use the SPEAKING FOCUS to help you.

- Choose the option which in your opinion is the best for the school.
- Support your choice with some reasons.
- Explain why you have rejected the other options.

I think the school should spend the money on computers because ...  
I don't think the school should choose option ... because ...



## 5.7 Writing

### An email/A letter of enquiry

*I can write a polite email/letter asking for information.*

#### PADDINGTON ENGLISH SCHOOL



Central London location ideal for shops, art galleries and museums.

We offer English courses for all levels and all exams:

**IELTS, TOEFL, CAMBRIDGE, PTE**

Excellent teachers, competitive prices.

Contact us: call 00 44 208 44 44 44 or write to enquiry@paddingtonenglish.co.uk.

Dear Sir or Madam,

I am a seventeen-year-old Italian student and I am writing to enquire about doing an English course at your school next summer. I am particularly interested in doing the Cambridge First exam. I got good marks in my English exam this year and I think I am B2 level. Could you tell me how long I will need to study and how much it will cost?

I would also like to know if you can arrange accommodation for me. Could you tell me what kind of accommodation you provide and how much it costs?

Finally, I would be grateful if you could send me details of how to book a course and how to pay for it.

I look forward to hearing from you.

Yours faithfully,

Analisa Bargellini

1 You want to do an English course in the UK. Read the advertisement and write down three questions you would like to ask about the school.

2 Read Analisa's email. Did she ask any of the questions you wrote down?

3 Put the sentences summarising the email in the order they appear (1-3).

- a polite questions about the information you need ☐
- b what you would like the reader to do ☐
- c information about yourself and why you are writing the email ☐

4 Match sentences 1-4 to their more polite versions in the email.

- 1 How long will I need to study and how much will it cost? \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Can you arrange accommodation for me? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 What kind of accommodation do you provide and how much does it cost? \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Please send me details of how to book a course. \_\_\_\_\_

5 Complete the indirect questions.

- 1 Does your school have a canteen?  
Could you tell me \_\_\_\_\_?
- 2 Can my friend stay in the same host family?  
I would like to know if \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 How far is the school from the nearest tube station?  
Could you tell me \_\_\_\_\_?
- 4 How many students are there in a class?  
I would like to know \_\_\_\_\_.

6 Match these answers (a-d) with the questions (1-4) in Exercise 5.

- a There are about 8-10.
- b Yes, if there are enough rooms.
- c No, but there are a lot of cafés nearby.
- d It's about five minutes away.

7 Write indirect questions for these answers.

- 1 The school is about ten minutes from the town centre.
- 2 Yes, we have special exam courses for your level.
- 3 We arrange weekend trips for the students.
- 4 Yes, there are usually different nationalities in the same class.

8 Complete the WRITING FOCUS with the words in purple in the email.

#### WRITING FOCUS

##### An email/A letter of enquiry

- Start the email/letter with *Dear Mr* or *Dear Mrs* and the person's surname. If you don't know the person's name, use *Dear Sir or Madam*.
- Don't use abbreviations or contractions. Use full forms: I would (not ~~be~~) (not ~~I'm~~).
- Use polite expressions to:
  - a ask for information: I would also like to know if ...
  - b ask somebody to do something for you: I would be grateful if ...
  - c say that you expect a reply: I look forward to ...
- Finish the email/letter with *Yours sincerely* if you know the name of the person you're writing to, or *Yours* if you don't.

9 Change the note to make it more formal (parts underlined in green) and grammatically correct (parts underlined in red).

Hi Mr Jones,  
I'm looking for a good language school. I'd like to know do you have courses in September.  
I thank you if you could send me some information.  
I am look forward for hear from you.  
Bye for now,  
Marcus

## Writing task

You have seen this advertisement and want to study English at St John's School. Write an email of enquiry to the school.

#### St John's School

Study English in the beautiful, peaceful village of Amberley. Small groups, experienced staff, excellent host-family accommodation.

For information about exams, fees and availability, please call 00 44 543 43 32 21 or write to Mary Johnson at mary@stjohn.edu.

A Write your email in 80-130 words. Include these points.

- Give information about yourself and say why you are writing the email.
- Ask for information about taking an exam, the nearest town or city and public transport.
- Say what you would like the reader to do.
- Say that you expect a reply.

#### Useful language

- I am writing to enquire about ...
- Could you please send me information about ...
- Can you give me some additional information about ...
- I look forward to your reply.

B Use the ideas in the WRITING FOCUS and the model to help you.

C Check.

- ✓ Have you used indirect questions?
- ✓ Have you started and closed the email with the correct phrases?
- ✓ Have you mentioned all the points in the question?
- ✓ Have you checked your spelling and punctuation?

# FOCUS REVIEW 5

## VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

- Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in capitals.
  - We made a \_\_\_\_\_ to move to the suburbs. **DECIDE**
  - A good \_\_\_\_\_ can change your life. **EDUCATE**
  - I wasn't sure what he meant, so I asked him for an \_\_\_\_\_ **EXPLAIN**
  - I'm going to do some \_\_\_\_\_ exercises tonight to practise before my English test tomorrow. **REVISE**
  - I've got a \_\_\_\_\_ of small rocks that I've brought back from holiday trips. **COLLECT**
  - She worked day and night and at the end of the week was close to \_\_\_\_\_ **EXHAUST**
- Complete the text with words which mean the same as the expressions in brackets. The first letter of each word is given.

We're 'f \_\_\_\_\_ (collecting money) for children in 'r \_\_\_\_\_ (far away) areas of Afghanistan and Pakistan. We believe that every child in the world should have the 'o \_\_\_\_\_ (chance) to 'a \_\_\_\_\_ (go to) school. Help the children become 'l \_\_\_\_\_ (able to read and write). Ask everybody you know to 'd \_\_\_\_\_ (give) money to invest in schools and help these children do well in life.

- Complete the First Conditional sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.
  - If I \_\_\_\_\_ (get up) too late, I \_\_\_\_\_ (not get) to school on time.
  - If you \_\_\_\_\_ (not hurry), we \_\_\_\_\_ (miss) the bus.
  - \_\_\_\_\_ (your dad/get) angry if you \_\_\_\_\_ (not get) into university?
  - He \_\_\_\_\_ (not pass) his exams if he \_\_\_\_\_ (not revise) properly.
  - What \_\_\_\_\_ (he/do) if we \_\_\_\_\_ (use) his computer?
  - I \_\_\_\_\_ (not help) you with your Maths if you \_\_\_\_\_ (not help) me with my English.
- Choose the correct answer, A, B or C.
  - Any student \_\_\_\_\_ hasn't finished their homework, please see me after the lesson.  
A who B which C where
  - This is the canteen \_\_\_\_\_ we eat our lunch.  
A that B which C where
  - Students \_\_\_\_\_ only revise the night before an exam don't usually do very well.  
A who B which C where
  - It was a gap year \_\_\_\_\_ seemed to last forever.  
A who B that C where
  - Oxford was the university \_\_\_\_\_ she did her degree.  
A who B that C where

## LANGUAGE IN USE

- Choose the option, A, B or C, which has the same meaning as the underlined phrase in each sentence.
  - I never avoid going to lessons.  
A drop B leave C skip
  - If you ask me, I think our school doesn't spend enough money on computers.  
A That's true, but B In my opinion, C I agree that
  - We have to learn fifty words by heart for our French test.  
A memorise B explain C revise
  - Uniforms are not compulsory at my school.  
A It is necessary to wear a uniform  
B You'll get into trouble if you don't wear a uniform  
C You don't have to wear a uniform
  - It's a single-sex school for ambitious boys that offers the best learning conditions.  
A which B where C who
  - A: I think that going to school every day is boring.  
B: That's true, but not all schools are the same.  
A I see what you mean C That's complete nonsense  
B I couldn't agree more
- Read the text and choose the correct answer, A, B or C.

www.myblog.abc

19 October

I'm in my final year of school and soon I'll have to make an important decision. My parents want me to apply <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ a place at university, but my best friend is going to do a gap year and she wants me to go with her. She's going to travel to a developing country and teach children <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ can't read or write.

I like the idea of a gap year because I haven't decided what I want to do at university. Also, I'm tired of studying; I always get good <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ and I've never got into trouble at school. Now I want some freedom. I want to go to a place where I don't have to <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ exams or attend classes. And I'd really like the opportunity to learn something about the world.

Most of my classmates are going to go to university when they <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ school. I'm sure they'll have a lot of fun. But I think I'm ready for an adventure. If my parents <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, I'll go abroad for six months, and when I get home I'll be ready to continue my studies.

- 1 A for B into C in
- 2 A where B which C who
- 3 A marks B fees C points
- 4 A fail B take C drop
- 5 A take off B leave C go
- 6 A agree B will agree C are going to agree

## READING

- Read the text and choose the correct answer, A, B, C or D.

### Buy a lunch, save a life

A lot of school students probably don't think very much about their lunch. Perhaps they bring some sandwiches from home or maybe they go to the school canteen. However, in many developing countries around the world, students do not get lunch at all. Every year, 15 million children die of hunger. This shocking statistic is why the Really Good School Dinner programme started in 2009.

Many organisations ask people to donate some money for those in need. The idea behind the Really Good School Dinner programme is different but simple. Students in the UK buy a healthy meal from their school canteen. They pay for their meal and donate ten pence extra. So, if their lunch costs £2.50, they pay £2.60. This ten pence is enough to buy a whole meal for a child in another country.

This clever method of fundraising feeds poor children and also gives them an education. In some poor, remote areas, students have to work to earn enough money to buy food. If they receive a free meal, they do not have to work and can spend more time studying. Students that receive an education can then get a better job and help their families. It is amazing that a free lunch can pull whole communities out of poverty!

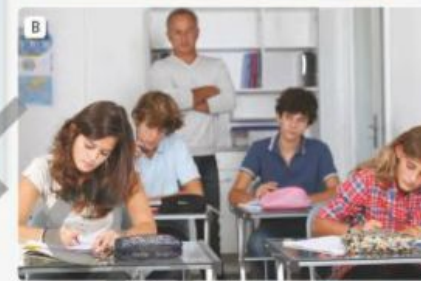
The Really Good School Dinner programme runs every February for one week. Since its beginning in 2009, students in the UK have raised over £28,000, which has bought more than 450,000 meals in the developing world. At the moment, over 300 schools are involved and more are joining each year. So far, the programme has helped children in Afghanistan and those affected by natural disasters such as the earthquake in Haiti in 2010 and the famine in East Africa in 2012.

- According to the text, students in poor countries
  - buy lunch at the canteen.
  - don't usually eat.
  - bring something to eat from home.
  - don't worry about lunch.
- How do students in the UK help poor children?
  - They donate nutritious meals.
  - They collect money and send it to poor countries.
  - They pay for a small part of a meal.
  - They give a small amount of money.
- The programme is an excellent idea because
  - it is an easy way to make a better future.
  - it feeds all the members of a community.
  - it helps children get to know people in the UK.
  - it gives work to poor students.
- How successful has the programme been?
  - UK students only raised money in 2009.
  - It has helped people in one area of the world.
  - More schools are becoming involved.
  - It raises over £28,000 every year.
- In the text the author
  - explains why some children die of hunger.
  - informs readers about a way to reduce hunger.
  - describes different places where there is hunger.
  - shows how he helps poor, hungry children.

## SPEAKING

- The photos show some students learning at school. In pairs, take turns to tell your partner what you can see in the photos.

I think they're doing a science experiment in photo A.



- Now talk about how you use technology at school to help you learn.

## WRITING

- Read the writing task. Think about photos you have taken and photos that you like.

You want to go on a popular photography course in England. Write an email to the course organiser. In your email you should:

- introduce yourself and say which course you're interested in
- tell them about your experience in photography
- ask for information about accommodation and payment.

# 6

## WORKING LIFE

Choose a job you love and  
you will never have to work  
a day in your life.

CONFUCIUS (551–479 BC),  
A CHINESE PHILOSOPHER AND POLITICIAN

### UNIT LANGUAGE AND SKILLS

#### Vocabulary:

- Show what you know – jobs
- work + prepositions
- collocations – terms and conditions
- confusing words – job vs work
- compound nouns
- phrasal verbs

#### Grammar:

- Second Conditional
- modal verbs for obligation and permission

#### Listening:

- a conversation about becoming an airline pilot

#### Reading:

- a text about a man who lived without money

#### Speaking:

- asking for and giving advice

#### Writing:

- an email/a letter of application

### FOCUS EXTRA

- Grammar Focus page 117
- WORD STORE booklet pages 12–13
- Workbook pages 68–79 or MyEnglishLab
- MP3s – www.english.com/focus

## 6.1 Vocabulary

work + prepositions • Terms and conditions •  
Confusing words – job vs work

I can talk about jobs and work.

### SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

- In pairs, complete the jobs with the suffixes -er, -or, -ian, -ist or -ant.  
builder account doct electric  
flight attend hairdress shop assist swimming instruct  
reception scient politic plumb
- Which jobs would you like/not like to do? Why?
- In pairs, look at the photos and read the job characteristics. Who do you think is happy (😊), OK (😐) or unhappy (😞) in their job? Why?
- CD 3.1 MP3-86 Listen and check your ideas. According to Lena and Albert, what is the secret of a happy job?

## WHAT MAKES YOU HAPPY IN YOUR JOB?

What is the happiest job in the world? We want to find out what makes people happy in their work. Is it a big salary? A nice office? Or is it more than that?

We asked six people in different jobs what they like and what they don't like about their jobs.

Lena



a hairdresser

- works **long hours**
- is on her feet all day
- is **badly paid**
- makes people happy

Anna



a nurse

- works long hours
- does **shifts**
- helps people
- works in a team
- doesn't earn much

- Match the people in Exercise 3 with the things they said.

1 I work for a construction company.

2 I'm a plumber.

3 I work for Citibank.

4 I work in a large hospital.

5 I'm in IT.

6 I work for my father.

- In pairs, talk about what you think would make you happy or unhappy in a job.

Martin



a builder

- does hard physical work
- works with his hands
- works outside
- gets/earns **low wages**
- does **overtime**

Eliza



a banker

- gets/earns a **high salary**
- gets a **pay rise** every year
- gets a **bonus**
- is responsible for a department
- gets very few **days off**

Albert



a plumber

- is **self-employed**
- works **flexible hours**
- works at the weekend
- deals with emergencies
- makes people happy

Justin



a computer programmer

- works **regular office hours**
- gets/earns an **average salary**
- gets **five weeks' paid holiday**
- works from home

Go to WORD STORE 6 page 13.

### WORD STORE 6A

- CD 3.2 MP3-89 Complete WORD STORE 6A. Add sentences from Exercise 5 as examples. Then listen, check and repeat.

- Complete the sentences with prepositions. Then decide if they are true (T) or false (F).

- Albert works \_\_\_\_\_ himself.
- Lena works \_\_\_\_\_ Microsoft.
- Eliza works \_\_\_\_\_ banking.
- Justin works \_\_\_\_\_ his brother.
- Anna works \_\_\_\_\_ the oil industry.
- Martin is \_\_\_\_\_ marketing.

### WORD STORE 6B

- CD 3.3 MP3-90 Complete WORD STORE 6B. Complete the diagram with the words in red in the text. Then listen, check and repeat.

- Choose the correct options.

- Who does / takes shifts?
- Who doesn't take / work many days off?
- Who earns / does low wages?
- Who earns / does overtime?
- Who gets / works a bonus?
- Who works / takes flexible hours?
- Who gets / works a pay rise every year?
- Who does / is self-employed?

- Answer the questions in Exercise 10 about the people in the text.

### WORD STORE 6C

- CD 3.4 MP3-91 Complete WORD STORE 6C with job or work. Then listen, check and repeat.

- Complete the questions with job or work. Then, in pairs, ask and answer the questions.

- Do you have a part-time \_\_\_\_\_?
- What time do most people start \_\_\_\_\_ in your country?
- Have you ever applied for a holiday \_\_\_\_\_?
- Would you like to \_\_\_\_\_ for a foreign company?
- Do either of your parents \_\_\_\_\_ from home?
- Do you know anybody who has a really good \_\_\_\_\_?

## 6.2 Grammar

### Second Conditional

I can talk about imaginary situations.

- In pairs, discuss how students can earn money in your country. Make a list of part-time jobs. Which jobs would you like/not like to do? Why?
- Do the quiz. Choose the answers that are best for you and find out what your ideal part-time job is.

### Your ideal part-time job

- If I had a day off tomorrow, I'd spend it with a friend. We'd  
A go swimming. B watch DVDs at home. C go shopping.
- If I won the lottery, I'd give some money to a charity. I'd choose  
A Free Sport for Everyone. B Love Eco Fashion.  
C Save the Children.
- If I had to describe myself in six words, it would be easy. I'd say  
A I love walking by the sea. B I like spending time in shops.  
C I want to help other people.
- If I needed money, I'd get a part-time job  
A in a sports centre. B at home. C in a shop.
- If I was super rich, I'd live in a big house  
A near a beach. B with all my family. C in the city centre.

### What your answers mean

Mainly As = Your ideal part-time job is outside, possibly something connected with sport, e.g. a lifeguard or a skiing instructor.

Mainly Bs = You would be good at caring for people, e.g. a babysitter or a carer for elderly people.

Mainly Cs = Your ideal part-time job is in retail, e.g. a shop assistant or a beautician.

- Read the GRAMMAR FOCUS. Then complete the examples with the Second Conditional forms in blue in the quiz.

### GRAMMAR FOCUS

#### Second Conditional

\* You use the Second Conditional to talk about the present or future result of an imaginary situation.

imaginary situation → result  
If + Past Simple, would/wouldn't + verb

If I had a day off tomorrow, I would spend it with a friend.  
(But I don't have a day off tomorrow, so I won't spend it with a friend.)

If I was super rich, I would live in a big house.

(But I'm not super rich, so I don't live in a big house.)

#### Note:

\* 'd = would

\* If I/he/she/it were ... is more formal than If I/he/she/it was ...  
If he were rich, he wouldn't work. If I were you, I would get a job.

- Complete the Second Conditional sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

- If everybody goes (go) to university, nobody would (want) to do manual jobs.
- There wouldn't be (not be) so much traffic if more people worked (work) from home.
- Family relationships would improve (improve) if parents took (take) more time off work.
- If people retired (retire) at fifty, there would be (be) more jobs for young people.
- The world would be (be) a better place if everybody had (have) a job.

- Rewrite these real situations as imaginary situations. Use the Second Conditional.

- I don't have a part-time job, so I don't earn any money.
- I don't earn any money, so I don't go out.
- I don't go out, so I don't meet new people.
- I don't meet new people, so my life is boring.
- My life is boring, so I'm not happy.
- I'm not happy, so I need a part-time job.



- Complete the gaps with the correct form of the verbs in brackets. Then finish the sentences to make them true for you.

- If I wanted (want) advice about getting a job, I'd ask my uncle.
- If I needed (need) to borrow money, I ...
- If I could (can) work anywhere in the world, I ...
- If I had (not have) a phone, I ...
- If I was (be) an animal, I ...
- If I studied (not have to) study, I ...
- If today was (be) the last day of my life, I ...

- In pairs, write questions about the situations in Exercise 6. Then ask and answer the questions.

- A: If you wanted advice about getting a job, who would you ask?  
B: I'd ask ...

Grammar Focus page 117

## 6.3 Listening

### Multiple choice

I can identify specific detail in short conversations and monologues.



airline pilot



childminder

- In pairs, look at the photos. What kind of person do you have to be to do these jobs? Use the adjectives in the box or your own ideas.

ambitious brave caring clever  
energetic kind practical responsible  
sensible serious

### EXAM FOCUS Multiple choice

- CD 3.5 MP3-92 Listen to three short recordings. Choose the correct picture (A, B or C) for each recording.

1 What is the woman's job?



2 Why did the girl's dad get a new job?



3 What do you need to do the woman's job well?



- CD 3.6 MP3-93 Listen to a conversation between Sophie and her aunt. Are the statements true (T) or false (F)?

- Aunt Mary doesn't want Sophie to become an airline pilot. ☐
- Sophie hasn't been to university yet. ☐
- Aunt Mary doesn't enjoy her job and wants to change. ☐
- Aunt Mary is already a captain. ☐
- Aunt Mary doesn't think it's a good career for women with children. ☐



electrician

- In pairs, complete the sentences about airline pilots with the words in the box. Then think of one more job for each of the characteristics.

degree eyesight home off people training

Airline pilots:

- must be long and expensive.
- need a degree.
- have to get on well with people.
- must have excellent eyesight.
- have to spend a lot of time away from home.
- can't choose when they take time off.

### PRONUNCIATION FOCUS

- CD 3.7 MP3-94 Listen and repeat. Underline the stressed syllable in each word.

- journalist receptionist specialist
- beautician electrician musician
- carpenter instructor interpreter
- engineer photographer secretary

- Which word in each group has one more syllable than the other words?

### WORD STORE 6D

- CD 3.8 MP3-95 Complete WORD STORE 6D. Complete the diagram with the words in the box to make job titles. Use your dictionary if necessary. Then listen, check and repeat.

## 6.4 Reading

### Multiple choice

I can understand the main points in short emails, notices and adverts.

- 1 In pairs, discuss these popular sayings about money. Which ones do you agree or disagree with?

MONEY IS THE ROOT OF ALL EVIL.

MONEY ISN'T EVERYTHING.

MONEY MAKES THE WORLD GO ROUND.

MONEY DOESN'T GROW ON TREES.

- 2 Read a text about a man who lived for a year without money. Which sayings do you think he would agree with?

- 3 In pairs, find at least six changes Boyle made to his lifestyle. Which changes would be possible or impossible for you? Why?

- 4 Read the text again. Are the statements true (T) or false (F)?

- 1 Mark Boyle discovered that he hated living without money. ☐
- 2 He went to college in his own country, Ireland. ☐
- 3 He wants people to offer their time, knowledge and abilities at a cheap price. ☐
- 4 He solved the problem of how to manage the basics of life. ☐
- 5 He lived in a tent, which was given to him for free. ☐
- 6 He thinks that people unnecessarily throw away lots of food. ☐

- 5 Find words or phrases in the text to replace the underlined words and phrases in Exercise 4.

- 1 discovered – found out
- 2 own country – \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 abilities – \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 solved the problem – \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 was given – \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 unnecessarily throw away – \_\_\_\_\_

- 6 Complete the sentences so they are true for you. Then compare with a partner.

- 1 My grandparents' native country is ...
- 2 I'd like to learn or improve the following skills: ...
- 3 I find it difficult to work out ...
- 4 I think people waste a lot of ...
- 5 If I don't know something, I find out the information by ...

### EXAM FOCUS Multiple choice

- 7 Read the three texts below and choose the correct answer, A, B or C.

- 1 A Angie sent the wrong website address.  
B Leo has read and likes the article.  
C Leo can't check the website address in Angie's email.
- 2 A People should take food to a main Food Bank.  
B People can give food inside supermarkets.  
C People should stop buying tins and pasta.
- 3 In the leaflet there is advice about  
A throwing less food away.  
B different types of energy.  
C how to pay energy bills.

- 1 To: Angie  
From: Leo  
Subject: Moneyless man article  
Could you resend me the website for the article you recommended? I copied it down wrong and deleted your email. It sounds really interesting!

- 2 Instead of buying food you don't use, why don't you donate some tins and packets of pasta to our Food Bank for local people who need it? We collect at all supermarkets in the area. You'll find us just inside the main doors.

3 Take a leaflet to find out how YOU can waste less food and energy. Work out your daily energy bill using our easy calculations. You'll be amazed!

### WORD STORE 6E

- 9 CD-3.10 MP3-97 Complete WORD STORE 6E. Add up or out to make phrasal verbs from the article. Then listen, check and repeat.

# Moneyless man

CD-3.9 MP3-96

Imagine living for a whole year without money: no cash, no credit cards, nothing. How would you manage? Where would you live? What would you eat? Businessman Mark Boyle did it and he found out that it wasn't so bad after all. In fact, he loved it.

So why did Mark Boyle decide to give up money?

- 10 The beginnings of 'Freeconomy'

Living without money was not his original plan. At college in his native Ireland he studied for a degree in Business. His plan was to get a good job and earn as much money as possible. But during his final year at college, he saw a film called *Gandhi* and heard the words that changed his life: 'Be the change you want to see in the world.'

- 11 The change that Boyle wanted to see in the world was for people to be less dependent on money. So he set up the Freeconomy Community. Its aim is for people to share their time, knowledge and skills without exchanging money. There are over 40,000 members of the community, in more than 160 different countries.



### A year without cash

Then Boyle realised that if he wanted money to be less important to people, he should try to live without it. So he decided to live for a year without cash. He knew it wouldn't be easy, so he bought three things: a solar panel, a wood-fired stove and a bicycle. Then he worked out how to manage the basics of life: food, shelter, washing, transport and social life.

For food, he grew his own vegetables and picked wild fruit, leaves and nuts in the forest. He also found food in bins outside supermarkets.

For shelter, he lived in a caravan, which was donated by a member of the Freeconomy Community. He didn't have electricity, so he used candles in the evening and read books that he borrowed from the library.

For washing, he used a solar-powered shower. He cleaned his teeth using fennel seeds from the forest and a pack of toothbrushes that he found in a supermarket bin. His toilet was a hole in the ground and he used old newspapers as toilet paper.

He cycled everywhere and kept fit by doing push-ups every morning.

He didn't miss television at all: he found lots of ways to have fun without spending any money. He went to free art exhibitions, cinema nights and music events. He wrote a blog and answered emails on his solar-powered computer.

### The Freeconomy philosophy

At the end of a year without money, Boyle felt fitter and happier than ever. This quote from his book entitled *The Moneyless Man* sums up his philosophy:

“If we all had to grow our own food, we wouldn't waste forty percent of it as we do today. If we made our own tables and chairs, we wouldn't throw them out the moment we changed the interior décor. If we had to clean our own drinking water, we wouldn't contaminate it.”



## 6.5 Grammar

### Modal verbs for obligation and permission

I can express obligation and permission.

- 1 In pairs, look at the saying and discuss what it means. What kind of jobs do you think it describes?

**YOU DON'T HAVE TO BE CRAZY TO WORK HERE, BUT IT HELPS.**

- 2 **CD-3.11 MP3-98** Listen to three people talking about their jobs. Choose the correct options.

- Jonnie is in the food industry / IT.
- Erica works for a fashion magazine / a clothes shop.
- Sam works in an office / from home.

- 3 **CD-3.11 MP3-98** Choose the correct options verb. Then listen again and check.



1 Jonnie

- He **doesn't have to** / **has to** wear the company T-shirt.
- He **can** / **can't** eat at his desk.
- He **must** / **mustn't** take his laptop into the canteen.



2 Erica

- She **has to** / **doesn't have to** work very long hours.
- She **needs to** / **doesn't need to** wear designer clothes or a suit.



3 Sam

- He **needs to** / **doesn't need to** get up early.
- He **can** / **can't** go for a run when he wants a break.
- He **must** / **mustn't** remember to have a shave before his conference call tonight.

- 4 Read the GRAMMAR FOCUS. Then complete the table with the modal verbs in blue in Exercise 3.

#### GRAMMAR FOCUS

Modal verbs for obligation and permission

You use **must**, **need to**, **have to** and **can** to express obligation and permission.

Necessary	Not necessary	Permitted	Not permitted
• have to/ has to	• don't have to/ 2	• 3	• can't
• need to/ 1	• don't need to/ doesn't need to/needn't		• 4
• must			

Note:

You usually use **have to** (not **must**) and **can't** (not **mustn't**) to talk about rules or arrangements:

*I **have to** (NOT **must**) work long hours. BUT*

*I **must** (NOT **have to**) remember to shave.*

- 5 Complete the sentences with **mustn't** or **needn't**.

- a You **needn't** rush – you've got plenty of time.  
b You **mustn't** rush – it's important to be 100 percent accurate.
- a You **needn't** go – you can stay if you want.  
b You **mustn't** go – we haven't finished yet.
- a You **needn't** tell her – it's a secret between you and me.  
b You **mustn't** tell her – she already knows everything.
- a You **needn't** eat that – you can leave it if you want.  
b You **mustn't** eat that – it's really bad for you.

- 6 Complete the questions with **have to** or **can**. Then write answers that are true for you.

- Do you have to** wear a uniform?
- Can** you call your teachers by their first name?
- Can** you use your mobile phone in class?
- Can** you take end of term tests in each subject?
- Can** you change classrooms for each lesson?
- Can** you leave school before you are eighteen?

- 7 Write two sentences, one with **has to** and one with **doesn't have to** for each job. Use the phrases in the box.

be fit be good at maths have a degree  
have a driving licence have good eyesight  
speak English wear a uniform work at the weekend

- police officer  
A police officer **has to** wear a uniform.  
A police officer **doesn't have to** be good at maths.
- secondary school teacher
- bus driver
- airline pilot
- accountant
- tourist guide

- 8 Think of three people you know with different jobs and write sentences about their jobs, like the ones in Exercise 7. Then, in pairs, take turns to tell your partner about each person.

Grammar Focus page 117

## 6.6 Speaking

### Asking for and giving advice

I can ask for and give advice about jobs and solving problems.

- 1 In pairs, read UK TODAY and discuss the questions.

- What is work experience and why is it useful?
- If you could do work experience, what would you do and why?



**UK TODAY**  
Did you know that nearly all fifteen- or sixteen-year-old students in the UK do work experience before they leave school?

#### What is work experience?

- 1–3 weeks off school working full-time for a local employer.

#### What are the benefits of work experience?

- It teaches useful work skills.
- It makes you think about possible careers.
- It develops self-confidence and communication skills.

- 2 **CD-3.12 MP3-99** Listen to Nick and Lisa talking about work experience. Are the statements true (T) or false (F)?



- Nick enjoyed doing work experience.
- He doesn't think you can learn much from other employees.
- He isn't sure that Lisa's father will accept her plans.

- 3 **CD-3.12 MP3-99** Listen again and tick the expressions you hear.

#### SPEAKING FOCUS

##### Asking for advice

- What do you think I should do? ☐
- Do you have any tips on how to ...? ☐
- Do you have any ideas about how to ...? ☐

##### Giving advice

- You should ... ☐
- I think you should ... ☐
- I don't think you should ... ☐
- Why don't you ...? ☐
- My best advice would be to ... ☐
- It's a good idea to ... ☐
- If I were you, I'd ... ☐

##### Accepting advice

- Thanks, that's really helpful. ☐
- That's great advice. Thanks! ☐

##### Rejecting advice

- I'm not sure that's a good idea. ☐

- 4 Match the sentence halves to make useful advice to somebody preparing for a job interview.

- I think you should ☐
- I don't think you should ☐
- My best advice would ☐
- It's a good idea ☐
- If I were you, ☐

- a. be nervous.
- b. do some research.
- c. be to be on time.
- d. I'd just be yourself.
- e. to prepare some questions.

- 5 **CD-3.12 MP3-100** Listen and check. Then listen and repeat.

- 6 Look at the statements and think about the advice you would give in each case. Make notes.

- I want to stay fit.
- It's my mother's birthday soon.
- I need some new clothes but I haven't got any money.
- I want to watch a good film.
- I can't wake up in the mornings.

- 7 In pairs, follow the instructions.

Student A: Choose a problem from Exercise 6 and tell Student B about it.

Student B: Give Student A some advice. Use your notes from Exercise 6 and the SPEAKING FOCUS to help you.

## 6.7 Writing

### An email/A letter of application

*I can apply for a summer job.*

#### 1 Read the job advert and answer the questions.

- 1 What kind of job is it advertising?
- 2 Is it a permanent job?
- 3 Is it a well-paid job?
- 4 How old do you have to be to apply?
- 5 What characteristics should the candidate have?
- 6 What are the working hours?

#### ARE YOU LOOKING FOR A summer job?

Johnson's Builders requires an office helper – €10 per hour

Are you sixteen or over? • reliable and hard-working? friendly and willing to learn? We offer excellent conditions • flexible hours a chance to learn office skills No previous experience necessary!

#### 2 If you saw this job advert in your local paper, would you be interested? Why?/Why not? Discuss in pairs.

#### 3 Imagine you want to apply for the job. Tick five pieces of information you should include in your letter of application.

- 1 Say where you saw the advert.
- 2 Say what you are doing now.
- 3 Say how you intend to spend your salary.
- 4 Give reasons why you are interested in the job.
- 5 Mention your CV and any relevant work experience.
- 6 Say why you liked or didn't like previous jobs.
- 7 Say when you are available for an interview.
- 8 Warn them not to call you at certain times.

#### 4 Read the letter and check your ideas in Exercise 2. Then cross out the three sentences in the letter which are not appropriate.

Dear Sir or Madam,

With **reference** to your advertisement in yesterday's *Devonshire Times*, I would like to **apply for** the position of part-time office helper. **At the moment**, I am in my final year at school and I will be available to start work from 1 June. I really need this job because I want to earn some money to go on holiday.

I am **particularly interested in** your company because I hope to study architecture at university. I **enclose my CV** for your information. As you will see, I worked on a building site last summer. It was a bit hard, but I got a really good suntan.

I do not have much experience of office work, but I am a fast learner. I have good communication skills and I enjoy working as part of a team. **For these reasons**, I feel I would be a suitable candidate for the job you are advertising.

I can be available for interview **at any time**. I have listed my contact details on my CV. Please don't call me before ten o'clock in the morning.

I look forward to hearing from you.

Yours faithfully,

Richard Dawson

Richard Dawson

#### 5 Complete the WRITING FOCUS with the words in purple in the letter.

### WRITING FOCUS

#### An email/A letter of application

- Say where you saw the advert.  
I am writing in response to your advertisement in / With **reference** to your advertisement in ...
- Say why you are writing.  
I am writing to express my interest in the position of / I would like to **2** \_\_\_\_\_ the position of ...
- Say what you are doing now.  
Currently, I am / At **3** \_\_\_\_\_, I am ...
- Give reasons why you are interested in the job.  
I found your advertisement very interesting because / I am **4** \_\_\_\_\_ your company because ...
- Mention your CV and any relevant work experience.  
My experience includes / I worked for ... as ... / I **5** \_\_\_\_\_ for your information. As you will see, I worked ...
- Give reasons why you are suitable for the job.  
I would be a suitable candidate for the job because ... / **6** \_\_\_\_\_, I feel I would be a suitable candidate for the job you are advertising.
- Say when you are available for an interview.  
I can be available for interview **7** \_\_\_\_\_.

#### 6 Complete the sentences from a letter of application with phrases from the WRITING FOCUS.

- 1 I am writing with \_\_\_\_\_ on our school website.
- 2 I \_\_\_\_\_ interview after 17 July or any weekend.
- 3 My \_\_\_\_\_ working in a restaurant for two months last summer.
- 4 I \_\_\_\_\_ interesting because I would like to work outside.
- 5 I \_\_\_\_\_ candidate for the job because I learn very quickly.
- 6 I am writing to \_\_\_\_\_ the position of receptionist.

#### 7 Read the advert and some sentences from different candidates. Are the people right (R) or wrong (W) for the job?

### WILD WEST SUMMER CAMPS

require

#### CAMP SUPERVISORS

Do you love outdoor life and camping?

We need friendly, outgoing young people with lots of energy and some knowledge of English.

You must know how to swim.

Experience with children and knowledge of first aid an advantage.

HAVE A GREAT SUMMER, IMPROVE YOUR ENGLISH AND EARN SOME MONEY AT THE SAME TIME!

Please apply to Ross Field, ross@wwsc.net.

- 1 I enjoy outdoor sports and games.
- 2 I got good results in my English exams.
- 3 I like the countryside, but I don't particularly like sleeping in tents!
- 4 I'd like a job in March or April.
- 5 I swim five times a week and I'm very fit.
- 6 I haven't worked with children before, but I think I'd be good at it.
- 7 I'm good at planning things, although I'm a bit shy with people.

## Writing task

You have seen the advertisement in Exercise 7 in the *International Student Times* and want to apply for the job. Write a letter of application for the job.

#### A Write your letter in 80–130 words. Include these points.

- Say where you saw the advertisement.
- Say what you are doing now and give reasons why you are interested in the job.
- Mention your CV and any relevant work experience.
- Say when you are available for an interview.

#### B Use the ideas in the WRITING FOCUS and the model to help you.

#### C Check.

- ✓ Have you mentioned all the points in the question?
- ✓ Have you used the correct opening and closing for a formal letter?
- ✓ Have you used phrases from the WRITING FOCUS?
- ✓ Have you divided your letter into paragraphs?
- ✓ Have you used linking words where appropriate?
- ✓ Have you checked your grammar and spelling?



# FOCUS REVIEW 6

## VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

1 Complete the sentences with words about work. The first letter of each word is given.

- My sister is an **o**\_\_\_\_\_ **a**\_\_\_\_\_. She answers phones and takes messages.
- My dad is a **c**\_\_\_\_\_. He loves working with wood.
- My parents usually take some **t**\_\_\_\_\_ **o**\_\_\_\_\_ in the summer so we can all go on holiday together.
- People who earn a **h**\_\_\_\_\_ **s**\_\_\_\_\_ should give more money to charity.
- My brother has started a **p**\_\_\_\_\_ **t**\_\_\_\_\_ job in the evenings to earn some extra money.

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in capitals.

- Once a year the company pays a bonus to its best **EMPLOY**.
- Tim is a \_\_\_\_\_ he plays the guitar in a band. **MUSIC**
- \_\_\_\_\_ work with their hands. They need to be fit and strong. **BUILD**
- My sister is doing a course on make-up. She wants to become a **BEAUTY**.
- A taxi \_\_\_\_\_ has to know the city well. **DRIVE**

3 Complete the Second Conditional sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

- If Tom \_\_\_\_\_ (earn) low wages, he \_\_\_\_\_ (look) for a new job.
- If you \_\_\_\_\_ (can) work for any company, which company \_\_\_\_\_ (you/like) to work for?
- If I \_\_\_\_\_ (be) you, I \_\_\_\_\_ (take) this job.
- She \_\_\_\_\_ (give) lots of jobs to young people if she \_\_\_\_\_ (be) a successful businessperson.
- If I \_\_\_\_\_ (wear) these glasses, everyone \_\_\_\_\_ (laugh) at me.

4 Complete the second sentence using the word in capitals so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Do not change the word in capitals.

- I'll let you take an extra day off. **CAN**  
You \_\_\_\_\_ an extra day off.
- Don't buy Zara a gift – we've sent her some flowers. **NEEDN'T**  
You \_\_\_\_\_ – we've sent her some flowers.
- I mustn't forget my mum's birthday this year. **REMEMBER**  
I \_\_\_\_\_ my mum's birthday this year.
- I have to get to work on time this morning. **LATE**  
I \_\_\_\_\_ for work this morning.
- Go out for a walk – don't just study all day. **SHOULDN'T**  
Go out for a walk – you \_\_\_\_\_ all day.
- Is it necessary to have a degree to be a computer programmer? **HAVE**  
\_\_\_\_\_ have a degree to be a computer programmer?

## LANGUAGE IN USE

5 Choose the correct answer, A, B or C.

- Alan \_\_\_\_\_ and he's tired in the evenings.  
A works with his hands B work part-time C works short hours
- I'm writing \_\_\_\_\_ the advertisement on your website.  
A because B to apply for C in response to
- We could work in the garden if \_\_\_\_\_ sunny.  
A it was B it will be C it's
- John is a lifeguard, but this summer he's going to work as a camp \_\_\_\_\_.  
A carer B babysitter C supervisor
- This is your desk, but you \_\_\_\_\_ come to the office every day – it's OK to work from home sometimes.  
A shouldn't B needn't C mustn't

6 Read the text and choose the correct answer, A, B, C or D.

### JACOB'S DREAM JOB

Is it really possible to find your dream job? Jacob Wilder, nineteen, has done just that. Jacob has always loved music, so he was very happy when he got the opportunity to work <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ a music company. It is three years later now and he works full-time as a music promoter.

'If I <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ choose any job in the world, it would be the job I have right now,' says Jacob. 'I am well-paid and the people I work with are great. Plus, I <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ dress smartly. I can wear what I want.'

There are disadvantages to his job, of course. Jacob needs to travel around the world. It is exciting, but also tiring and it means Jacob often works <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, sometimes until three or four o'clock in the morning.

At the age of nineteen, Jacob already has three years' work <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. But does he mind not going to university? 'Not really,' he says. 'I have worked hard, and I have my own car and my own flat. If I was at university, I <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ have all that now.'

- |                |              |                 |
|----------------|--------------|-----------------|
| 1 A to         | B for        | C on            |
| 2 A will       | B would      | C could         |
| 3 A mustn't    | B shouldn't  | C don't have to |
| 4 A shifts     | B long hours | C from home     |
| 5 A experience | B travel     | C education     |
| 6 A wouldn't   | B don't      | C won't         |

## LISTENING

7 **CD 3.14 MP3-101** Listen to a conversation between a teenage girl and her uncle. Are the statements true (T) or false (F)?

- Leia only knows one male nurse. ☐
- Jon's friends have always taken his profession seriously. ☐
- Jon is satisfied with his salary. ☐
- Sometimes Jon starts work at night. ☐
- Jon has been promoted to nurse manager. ☐

## WRITING

8 You are going to write a story. Read the title of the story and think about what you are going to write. In pairs, discuss the questions.

### A TERRIBLE DAY AT WORK

- What's your job?
- When was the terrible day?
- What happened first?
- What happened next?
- How did you feel?
- Did you learn anything from this day? What?

9 Write your story in about 100 words.

## SPEAKING

10 Complete the questions with the words in the box. There are two extra words. Then, in pairs, ask and answer the questions.

boss ever kind never office overtime

- What \_\_\_\_\_ of job do you hope to get in the future? Why?
- Have you \_\_\_\_\_ worked? Why?/Why not?
- Would you like to work in an \_\_\_\_\_? Why?/Why not?
- Do you think you could be a good \_\_\_\_\_? Why?/Why not?

11 The photos show people in situations at work. In pairs, take turns to say what you can see in your photo. Then discuss the questions about each photo.



- How is the woman in the photo feeling? Why?
- What would you do if you were late for an important exam? Why?
- Talk about a situation when you or someone you know were late for an important event.



- In your opinion, why is the woman in the photo sleeping?
- What would you do if you suddenly felt very tired/sleepy during a lesson?
- Talk about a situation when you or someone you know felt bored during an important event.

# 7 SHOPPING

People who say money  
can't buy you happiness  
don't know where to  
go shopping.

ANONYMOUS

## UNIT LANGUAGE AND SKILLS

### Vocabulary:

- Show what you know – shops
- shops and services
- partitives (a bottle of ...)
- shopping – useful phrases
- collocations
- word families

### Grammar:

- the Passive
- quantifiers

### Listening:

- a radio interview about buying presents

### Reading:

- a text about how colours are used in advertising

### Speaking:

- shopping and making complaints

### Writing:

- an email/a letter of complaint

## FOCUS EXTRA

- Grammar Focus page 118
- WORD STORE booklet pages 14–15
- Workbook pages 80–91 or MyEnglishLab
- MP3s – www.english.com/focus

## 7.1 Vocabulary

Shops and services • Partitives • Shopping

*I can talk about shops and shopping.*

### SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

1 Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

bread clothes meat newspapers  
pet shoe toy vegetables

- 1 You buy toys for your dog at a \_\_\_\_\_ shop.
- 2 You buy \_\_\_\_\_ at a butcher's.
- 3 You buy \_\_\_\_\_ at a newsagent's.
- 4 You buy \_\_\_\_\_ at a baker's.
- 5 You buy toys and games at a \_\_\_\_\_ shop.
- 6 You buy \_\_\_\_\_ at a greengrocer's.
- 7 You buy shoes and sandals at a \_\_\_\_\_ shop.
- 8 You buy shirts and skirts at a \_\_\_\_\_ shop.

2 Look at the photos and read the text. What three things can you do in the Mall of America that you can't usually do in a shopping mall?

3 In pairs, discuss where you can do these things in your city.

### MALL OF AMERICA

#### THE MALL



THE CHAPEL

Shopping malls used to be indoor shopping centres, especially popular in the USA. But some of the biggest shopping malls around the world are much more than shopping centres – they're a way of life! Take the Mall of America in Bloomington, Minnesota. You can buy **trainers**, **toiletries**, **light bulbs** and **plants**, have a **manicure** before lunch and then you can have a ride in the **theme park**, watch hundreds of sharks in the **aquarium** or spend an afternoon at the **cinema**. Oh, and you can add 'get married' to your shopping list. There's even a **wedding chapel**!

#### THE AQUARIUM



#### THE THEME PARK



4 **CD-3.15** **MP3-102** Listen to five people giving their opinion about shopping malls. Match speakers 1–5 with their opinions a–e.

#### ADVANTAGES

- a ☐ It doesn't matter what the weather is like.  
Parking is easy.  
You don't need cash.
- b ☐ There is something for everybody.
- c ☐ You can spend all day there.  
Everything is in the same place.

#### DISADVANTAGES

- d ☐ Most things are too expensive.  
All malls are the same.  
There are too many designer shops.
- e ☐ They take business away from small shops.  
There are no windows in the restaurants.

5 In pairs, discuss your opinions about shopping malls. Which advantages or disadvantages in Exercise 4 do you agree with?

Go to WORD STORE 7 page 15.

### WORD STORE 7A

6 **CD-3.16** **MP3-103** Complete WORD STORE 7A with the words in red in the text. Then listen, check and repeat.

7 Complete the questions with the correct form of the words from WORD STORE 7A. Then, in pairs, ask and answer the questions.

When was the last time you:

- 1 bought a pair of \_\_\_\_\_?
- 2 changed a \_\_\_\_\_?
- 3 had a scary ride in a \_\_\_\_\_?
- 4 bought some perfume or other expensive \_\_\_\_\_?
- 5 posted a parcel at the \_\_\_\_\_?
- 6 used a \_\_\_\_\_ to clean a rug or a carpet?

### WORD STORE 7B

8 Speaker 1 in Exercise 4 talked about the advantages of a shopping mall. Complete her sentence with the words in the box. There are two extra words.

[bottle bunch can jar packet pair]

'I can buy a <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ of shampoo, a <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ of biscuits, a new <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ of skis and a <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ of flowers for my mum, all in the same place.'

9 **CD-3.17** **MP3-104** Complete WORD STORE 7B with the words in the box in Exercise 8. Then listen, check and repeat.

10 Complete WORD STORE 7B with the words in the box.

[bananas beans crisps mayonnaise  
mineral water scissors]

### WORD STORE 7C

11 **CD-3.18** **MP3-105** Complete WORD STORE 7C with the underlined phrases in the questions. Then listen, check and repeat.

- 1 Do you ever go window shopping? How often?
- 2 When do shops usually have a sale in your country?
- 3 When did you last buy something on special offer?
- 4 Where can you pick up a bargain? Name shops.
- 5 When was the last time you thought 'I'd love to buy that but I just can't afford it'?
- 6 If you don't keep your receipt, is it still possible to take something back to a shop and get a refund?

12 In pairs, ask and answer the questions in Exercise 11.

## 7.2 Grammar

### The Passive

I can use passive forms to talk about trade and processes.

#### 1 In pairs, discuss the questions.

- Who usually does the shopping in your family?
- What food products do you and your family buy every week?
- Which of these things are important when you buy food?
  - the quality
  - how it is produced
  - where it is produced
  - a fair price

#### 2 Read the text about Fairtrade. Why is it good for farmers, consumers and the environment?



Many of the products we buy in supermarkets are grown by farmers in developing countries. But often farmers aren't paid enough to make a living.

So the idea of 'fair trade' has been around for many years. When you see the Fairtrade Mark on a product, you know that the farmers have been paid a fair price for their crops. You also know that they have been given extra money –

the Fairtrade premium. This can be used by farmers to develop their businesses, invest in their communities or protect the environment.

In 1997, many organisations from different countries came together and one international Fairtrade organisation was formed. So far, the lives of approximately seven million people in developing countries have been improved by Fairtrade.

#### 3 Read the GRAMMAR FOCUS. Then underline all the passive verb forms in the text.

### GRAMMAR FOCUS

#### The Passive

You use passive forms when it isn't important to know (or you don't know) who performed the action. Passive verbs have the same tenses as active verbs.

The Passive: be + past participle

- + Fairtrade products are grown in developing countries.
- Fairtrade products aren't grown in developed countries.
- ? Where are Fairtrade products grown?

#### 4 Look at Exercise 2 again. Complete the examples below with the passive forms in blue in the text.

##### Present Simple

##### Active

People don't pay farmers enough.

##### Passive

Farmers <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ enough.

##### Past Simple

##### Active

In 1997, somebody formed one international Fairtrade organisation.

##### Passive

In 1997, one international Fairtrade organisation <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.

##### Present Perfect

##### Active

Fairtrade has improved the lives of approximately seven million people in developing countries.

##### Passive

The lives of approximately seven million people in developing countries <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ by Fairtrade.

#### 5 Read the text and choose the correct options.

### Chocolate & Fairtrade

Last year more than one billion kilos of chocolate <sup>1</sup>ate / ~~was eaten~~ around the world. Chocolate <sup>2</sup>makes / ~~is made~~ from the cacao plant. However, many cacao farmers <sup>3</sup>don't earn / ~~aren't earned~~ enough money and <sup>4</sup>can't afford / ~~can't be afforded~~ food, medicine or clean water. In Africa, a typical cacao grower <sup>5</sup>pays / ~~is paid~~ less than a dollar a day. Now Fairtrade is helping farmers to get fair prices. Farming organisations <sup>6</sup>have set up / ~~have been set up~~ in African countries and the extra money <sup>7</sup>invests / ~~is invested~~ in projects such as drinking water.



#### 6 Complete the sentences with the correct passive form of the verbs in brackets. Use the Present Simple, Past Simple or Present Perfect.

- My house \_\_\_\_\_ (build) fifty years ago.
- My name \_\_\_\_\_ (not pronounce) the same in English.
- My shoes \_\_\_\_\_ (make) in Italy.
- My school \_\_\_\_\_ (open) in the 1990s.
- I \_\_\_\_\_ (never/stop) by the police.
- Fairtrade products \_\_\_\_\_ (not sell) in my country.
- The new chocolate bar \_\_\_\_\_ (not introduce) yet.
- Rubbish \_\_\_\_\_ (collect) in our area every Wednesday and Friday.

Grammar Focus page 118

## 7.3 Listening

### True/False

I can identify details in an interview.

#### 1 In pairs, discuss the questions about presents.

- Have you ever given or received a present like the ones in the photos?
- What is the best or worst present you've ever received?



#### 2 CD 3.19 MP3-106 Listen to a radio interview about buying presents. Which presents from the photos are suggested for each person?

- Isabelle's mum ☐
- Alexander's girlfriend ☐
- Charlotte's classmate ☐

#### 3 Read the statements in Exercise 4. Match the underlined phrases with these phrases from the interview.

- can buy ☒ cheer her up ☐  
 classmates ☐ is a question of ☐  
 it isn't the value of the present ☐  
 that matters ☐

### EXAM FOCUS True/False

#### 4 CD 3.19 MP3-106 Listen again. Are statements 1–5 true (T) or false (F)?

- Amy thinks the ability to choose good presents is a matter of personality. ☐
- Amy thinks both men and women are capable of buying good presents. ☐
- Isabelle thinks her mother is upset about being forty, so she wants to make her feel happier. ☐
- Charlotte wants to buy a nice expensive gift for one of her school friends. ☐
- Amy says that a successful present doesn't have to cost a lot of money. ☐

### PRONUNCIATION FOCUS

#### 7 CD 3.20 MP3-107 Listen and identify the silent letter in each word.

- |           |              |
|-----------|--------------|
| 1 receipt | @ psychology |
| 2 write   | wrong        |
| 3 debt    | doubt        |
| 4 island  | aisle        |
| 5 know    | knife        |
| 6 listen  | castle       |

#### 8 CD 3.20 MP3-107 Listen again and repeat.

### WORD STORE 7D

#### 9 CD 3.21 MP3-108 Complete WORD STORE 7D. Match the verbs and nouns in the boxes to make collocations. Then listen, check and repeat. Write an example sentence for each collocation.

## 7.4 Reading

### Multiple choice

I can find specific detail in an article.

- 1 Look at the colour chart. In pairs, take turns to tell each other about these things.

- colours you like
- colours you don't like,
- colours you associate with the words in the box.

ecology elegance energy  
fun loyalty passion royalty  
young boys young girls



- 2 Read the text. Which colour associations are the same as your ideas in Exercise 1?

- 3 Match 1–6 with a–f to make questions.

- 1 What do you have to pay attention
- 2 Which colour would you use to attract
- 3 How can you get customers to trust you
- 4 If you don't use purple with
- 5 If you want to focus
- 6 Why is it no

- a with their credit card details?
- b care, what can happen?
- c surprise that Amazon use the colour orange?
- d to in today's market?
- e on pre-teen girls, which colour is best?
- f somebody's attention?

- 4 In pairs, discuss the questions in Exercise 3.

## Colours and the consumer

by Tim Roberts



CD 3.22 MP3-109

In today's competitive market, shops need to pay attention to the colours they use to attract customers. All colours are associated with different emotions, so they have to choose them carefully. Here's a brief outline of the effect of different colours on the typical consumer.

### Red

Red is the colour of extremes and strong emotions: passion, danger and anger. It's associated with speed and excitement, so it's no surprise that red is the most popular colour for sports cars. It is the most noticeable colour in the spectrum, so it's used for everything that wants to attract our attention in a hurry, such as warning signs on the road and fire engines. This is why you often see 'SALE' signs in red. The colour red makes your heart beat faster and attracts people who buy things on impulse.

### Blue

Blue is the colour of security, loyalty and honesty. This is why it's used by so many banks. If blue is used on a website, customers will trust the site with their credit card details. Blue is a calm, relaxing colour, often used to attract careful customers rather than impulse buyers. When blue lighting was installed on the streets of Glasgow, crime fell dramatically.

### Green

Green has always been the colour of growth and nature. Now it has become the symbol of ecology and the environment. This is why it's often used on food packaging. There are different shades of green and it's a colour that has to be chosen carefully. Light green is fresh and eco-friendly, while dark green may be associated with negative emotions such as jealousy and greed. In western cultures, green is a lucky colour.

### Purple

Since Roman times, purple has been associated with royalty. It suggests magic and mystery, wealth and luxury. Expensive anti-aging beauty products are often packaged in purple, especially to attract the older and wealthier customers. Shops must use purple with care – it can easily look old-fashioned.

### Yellow

Yellow is the colour of youth, happiness and creativity. Bright and cheerful, yellow is a colour that makes people feel energetic. If a shop window has yellow in it, customers will be attracted to the shop.

### Pink

Pink is the colour of pre-teen girls. For products that focus on this age group and gender, pink is the colour that shops always choose. Pink suggests love, friendship and kindness. While red is passionate, pink is romantic and sweet.

### Orange

Children love orange. It's fruity and fun. In shops it may suggest that a product is economical or cheap. It's no surprise that it's the colour of cheap airlines like easyJet and the online bookstore Amazon.

### Colour combinations

Red and yellow are used for logos by McDonald's, Burger King and Kentucky Fried Chicken. It's difficult to see this combination without thinking of fast food. However, black and white suggest elegance and was chosen by Chanel for their branding.

### EXAM FOCUS Multiple choice

- 5 Read the text again. For questions 1–6, choose the correct answer, A, B, C or D.

- 1 Red is used for warning signs because it is the most
  - A dangerous.
  - B exciting.
  - C visible.
  - D impulsive.
- 2 What is people's attitude to the colour blue?
  - A It makes them do things more carefully.
  - B It makes them feel safe.
  - C It makes them report crimes.
  - D It makes them decide to buy things quickly.
- 3 Which colour is not associated with positive feelings?
  - A light blue
  - B dark green
  - C purple
  - D bright yellow
- 4 What do yellow, pink and orange have in common?
  - A They appeal to younger people.
  - B They have to be used carefully.
  - C They are rarely used in advertising.
  - D They are associated with happiness and fun.
- 5 An advert with red and yellow
  - A makes you think of fast food.
  - B can cause confusion.
  - C is better than black and white.
  - D helps customers understand your product.
- 6 This article is
  - A a report on which colours consumers prefer.
  - B one person's subjective opinion.
  - C a summary of how colours can influence the consumer.
  - D a guide for shops on how to improve their sales.

- 6 Choose the correct options. Then, in pairs, ask and answer the questions.

- 1 When was the last time you were in a hurry / speed?
- 2 Are you a sudden / an impulse buyer or do you plan your shopping?
- 3 What makes your heart beat / hit faster?
- 4 What sort of shops are you attracted with / to?
- 5 Do you think you are a typical / usual consumer?
- 6 How often do you eat quick / fast food?

- 7 In pairs, discuss the questions.

- 1 How many famous brands or logos can you think of?
- 2 What colours do they use?
- 3 Which logo do you think is the most recognisable?

### WORD STORE 7E

- 8 CD 3.23 MP3-110 Complete WORD STORE 7E. Add nouns to the table. Mark the stress. Then listen, check and repeat.

## 7.5 Grammar

### Quantifiers

I can understand countable and uncountable nouns and use appropriate quantifiers.

#### 1 In pairs, discuss the questions.

- Which of these types of shoes have you got?
  - pumps
  - boots
  - flip flops
  - high heels
  - sandals
  - trainers
- Which are your favourite shoes? Why?
- When was the last time you bought a pair of shoes?

#### 2 Read the text. What happens when you buy a pair of TOMS shoes?



Do you have too many pairs of shoes? How many pairs do you need? Most people have a few pairs of trainers, some smart shoes, a pair of boots and some sandals. But can you imagine living without any shoes at all?

Blake Mycoskie was shocked when he found out that a lot of children around the world were growing up without any shoes. So he set up a company called Shoes for Tomorrow (TOMS). Every time he sells a pair, he gives a pair of new shoes to a child in need. He doesn't have to do much advertising – when people hear about TOMS, they tell one another. Over the years, he's given lots of shoes to people in need – more than a million, in fact. TOMS has become the One for One™ company who give eyewear as well as shoes to people around the world. With a little imagination and a lot of hard work, Mycoskie has transformed the lives of a lot of people.

#### 3 Look at the nouns and quantifiers in blue in Exercise 2. Which of the underlined nouns are countable and which are uncountable?

#### 4 Read the GRAMMAR FOCUS and complete it with countable or uncountable.

### GRAMMAR FOCUS

#### Quantifiers

You use different expressions to talk about quantity:

- With <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ nouns you use:  
*very few/a few/too many/how many?*
- With <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ nouns you use:  
*very little/a little/too much/how much?*
- With both <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ and <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ nouns you use:  
*any/some/a lot of/lots of*

#### Note:

Usually, you use a few, a little or some in affirmative sentences and many, much or any in negative sentences and questions.

#### 5 Read the text and choose the correct quantifiers.

### FAQ

Q: How did TOMS begin?

A: When Blake Mycoskie was twenty-nine, he took 'a little / a few' time off work to go travelling. He met a charity worker, and she told him how 'much / many' children in developing countries were without shoes. This gave Mycoskie an idea for a shoe company and a way to help 'some / any' of these children.

Q: How 'much / many' difference can a simple pair of shoes make to so 'much / many' children's lives?

A: A pair of shoes can make 'many / a lot of' difference to a child. Firstly, there are 'lots of / a little' diseases in the soil and shoes protect children. Secondly, 'very few / very little' schools allow children to attend classes without shoes. So shoes help children to get an education.

#### 6 Complete the sentences with the correct Present Simple form of the verbs in brackets.

- There \_\_\_\_\_ (be) lots of shoe shops near here.
- A lot of people \_\_\_\_\_ (do) their shopping online.
- There \_\_\_\_\_ (be) a lot of pollution in our city.
- A lot of fast food \_\_\_\_\_ (be) bad for you.
- Lots of shops \_\_\_\_\_ (be) closed on Sundays.
- A lot of people in my country \_\_\_\_\_ (know) about TOMS.

#### 7 Read REMEMBER THIS. Then rewrite the sentences in Exercise 6 replacing a lot of/lots of with very little or very few.

1 There are very few shoe shops near here.

### REMEMBER THIS

little money – not much money  
few friends – not many friends  
BUT  
a little money – some money  
a few friends – some friends

#### 8 Make these sentences negative using not much or not many. On a typical school day, which sentence – affirmative or negative – is true for you?

- I eat a lot of bread. → *I don't eat much bread.*
- I send a lot of texts. → \_\_\_\_\_
- I drink a lot of water. → \_\_\_\_\_
- I do a lot of homework. → \_\_\_\_\_
- I spend a lot of money. → \_\_\_\_\_
- I talk to a lot of people. → \_\_\_\_\_

#### 9 In pairs, ask and answer questions about your typical school day. Use How much ...? or How many ...? with the topics in Exercise 8 and the topics in the box.

do exercise get sleep have lessons  
listen to music spend time online watch television

A: How much bread do you eat?

B: Lots. How about you?

A: Very little. I don't like bread.

Grammar Focus page 118

## 7.6 Speaking

### Shopping and making complaints

I can buy things in a shop and make complaints.

#### 1 In pairs, talk about shopping in your area.

Which shop is:

- the cheapest/most expensive?
- the most/least fashionable for clothes?
- the one with the most/least helpful shop assistants?

#### 2 Match the customers' comments (a–g) with the situations (1–5).

- Get it. It really suits you.
- Oh no! They've sold out.
- They're on offer – buy one and get one free.
- I'm just looking, thanks.
- Look, it's half price!
- It's not exactly what I'm looking for.
- It's reduced from £50 to £19.99.

- The item is on special offer. ☐ a, ☐ g
- The colour and style are perfect. ☐ b
- The item is not quite right for you. ☐ f
- The item is out of stock. ☐ c
- You don't want the shop assistant to bother you. ☐ d

#### 3 CD 3.24 MP3-111 Look at the pictures and listen to two conversations. In which conversation do you hear these? Write 1 or 2.

- complain ☐
- dress ☐
- Jenny ☐
- present ☐
- ripped ☐
- size 12 ☐
- zip ☐
- top ☐

#### Conversation 1



#### 4 CD 3.24 MP3-111 Complete the SPEAKING FOCUS with the words in the box. Then listen again and check.

changing looking fit receipt help refund how size

### SPEAKING FOCUS

#### Shopping for clothes

Shop assistant

- Can I <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ you?
- Would you like to try it on?
- The <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ rooms are over there.
- <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ would you like to pay?
- Make sure you keep your receipt.

Customer

- Excuse me, I'm <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ for a top.
- I'm a <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ 10.
- Do you have this in a size 12, please?
- I'll take it.
- Cash, please./By credit card.
- If it doesn't <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, can we get a refund?

#### Making complaints

Shop assistant

- What's wrong with it?
- Do you have your <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_?
- We can exchange it for a new one.

Customer

- I bought this dress last week, but the zip doesn't work.
- I think it's faulty./It shrank./There's a hole in it./The colour ran.
- I'd like a <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, please.

#### 5 In pairs, follow the instructions to prepare a conversation. Use the SPEAKING FOCUS to help you.

Student A: You are a customer returning a faulty pair of jeans. Say when you bought the jeans and explain what is wrong with them (colour ran/they shrank).

Student B: You are a shop assistant. Ask Student B if he/she has a receipt. Suggest a solution to the problem (refund/repair/new pair of jeans).

#### 6 Practise your conversation. Then act it out to the class.

#### Conversation 2



## 7.7 Writing

### An email/A letter of complaint

*I can make a polite written complaint.*

- 1 In pairs, tick any problems that you, your family or your friends have had when buying something. Tell your partner about them.

- 1 The product was past its sell-by date. ☐
- 2 It didn't work. ☐
- 3 It was broken or damaged. ☐
- 4 Some parts were missing. ☐
- 5 The service was bad. ☐
- 6 The delivery was late. ☐
- 7 The product was different from the description. ☐
- 8 It was the wrong product. ☐

- 2 Read email 1 and answer the questions.

- 1 Which problems from Exercise 1 did the customer have?
- 2 Is this a polite written complaint? Why?/Why not?

1  
I can't believe you've sent me another pair of headphones that don't work. These headphones are rubbish! When I called about the first pair that didn't work, the person on the phone was very unhelpful. The second time, he was rude. I think he's in the wrong job – he shouldn't be in contact with the public. He needs to do a course in people skills.

Anyway, he told me to write to the head office. I found that annoying, but I did it and you sent a replacement. Guess what – they're damaged and they don't work! I want my money back now – and I will never use your company again.

Ronnie

- 3 Read the tips in the WRITING FOCUS. Which tips does email 1 not follow?

#### WRITING FOCUS

##### An email/A letter of complaint

- Open and close the email or letter politely.
- Give a reason for writing.
- Say what you bought and when.
- Explain the problem, giving details.
- Tell the reader what you expect them to do.
- Use polite language.
- Do not use contractions.

- 4 Read email 2. Underline examples for each of the tips in the WRITING FOCUS.

2

Dear Sir or Madam,

I am writing to complain about the service provided by your company.

I bought a pair of headphones (Model: SA-DIV-RED) from your website on 3 March. They arrived the next day, but when I tried them, they did not work, so I returned them to you on 5 March and you exchanged them. Unfortunately, the second pair you sent were the wrong model, so I emailed you again and sent them back one more time. I received a pair of headphones from you today, but when I unpacked them, I found they were damaged and they do not work.

I am very disappointed with your service. I do not want another pair of headphones from your company. I would be grateful if you could send me a full refund for the headphones and the cost of sending them back to you three times.

Yours faithfully,

R. Barker

- 5 Complete the phrases in the Useful language box with the words in the box.

afraid complain disappointed grateful  
please sir unfortunately yours

#### Useful language

- 1 Dear \_\_\_\_\_ or Madam,
- 2 I am writing to \_\_\_\_\_ about my new smartphone.
- 3 I am \_\_\_\_\_ I have a complaint to make.
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_, the second phone you sent me did not work either.
- 5 I am very \_\_\_\_\_ with this phone.
- 6 I would be \_\_\_\_\_ if you could replace it.
- 7 Could you \_\_\_\_\_ refund my money?
- 8 \_\_\_\_\_ faithfully,

- 6 Rewrite the sentences so that they are polite.

- 1 I want the phone replaced!
- 2 This phone is useless!
- 3 I want a refund.
- 4 Your service is rubbish!

- 7 You have recently bought a product which doesn't work. Here are some notes you have started for the written complaint you want to make about the product. Add one or two sentences to each note. Use the phrases in the Useful language box.

To: Mr Jarvis

Problem: new printer doesn't work

Date bought: 15 February

Previous complaint: emailed him ten days ago

Action required: refund

From:

## Writing task

Read the information and the message from a customer below, sent to an online music store. Imagine you are the customer and write an email of complaint to the store.

Contact Customer Services Returns FAQ's

#### CONTACT US

Select a category: choose from the drop-down menu.

Please tell us the type of problem you are experiencing:

- My download won't complete.
- This is not the music I wanted.
- My file won't play.
- The quality of the sound is low.
- I deleted the file by mistake.

#### Comment

I want to complain about your service. I have tried to download Adele's album '21' three times this month, but every time the download has not completed. I've contacted you three times on 1, 8 and 17 April. I've been a loyal customer for two years and I've enjoyed the music I've bought each month from your site. But now I want a refund of my last month's subscription. Please close my account.

SEND

- A Write your email in 80–130 words. Include these points.

- Give a reason for writing.
- Say what you bought and when you bought it.
- Explain the problem and give details.
- Tell the person what you expect them to do about the problem.

- B Use the ideas in the WRITING FOCUS and the model to help you.

- C Check.

- ✓ Have you included all the points in the question?
- ✓ Have you used polite language?
- ✓ Have you opened and closed your email correctly?
- ✓ Have you organised your email into paragraphs?
- ✓ Have you checked your grammar and spelling?



# FOCUS REVIEW 7

## VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

1 Cross out the word in each group which cannot be used with the container.

- 1 a packet of *tea / biscuits / cake / crisps*
- 2 a bunch of *bananas / grapes / bread / flowers*
- 3 a pair of *clothes / skis / scissors / jeans*
- 4 a bottle of *water / jam / milk / shampoo*
- 5 a can of *cola / tomatoes / beans / cheese*
- 6 a jar of *jam / bananas / instant coffee / mayonnaise*

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in capitals.

- 1 Don't be \_\_\_\_\_. I've already had three cakes. **GREED**
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ is an important quality. We all need friends we can depend on. **LOYAL**
- 3 I hope they'll \_\_\_\_\_ the prices in the sale. **REDUCTION**
- 4 Have you packed all your \_\_\_\_\_? What about toothpaste and shampoo? **TOILET**
- 5 There's far too much food \_\_\_\_\_. I throw so much plastic away. **PACK**
- 6 This top is really pretty. Why don't you try it on in the \_\_\_\_\_ room? **CHANGE**

3 Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first.

- 1 They built the house in 2013.  
The house \_\_\_\_\_ in 2013.
- 2 They didn't ask me any questions.  
I \_\_\_\_\_ any questions.
- 3 They have sold over 1,000 bikes so far this year.  
Over 1,000 bike bikes \_\_\_\_\_ so far this year.
- 4 You pronounce it the same way in English.  
It \_\_\_\_\_ the same way in English.
- 5 He painted more than 100 pictures in this studio.  
More than 100 pictures \_\_\_\_\_ in this studio.
- 6 When did they open their first shop?  
When \_\_\_\_\_?

4 Choose the correct answer, A, B, C or D.

- 1 'How \_\_\_\_\_ purses do you own?' 'Just one.'  
A any B few C much D many
- 2 There are \_\_\_\_\_ different colours in that advert. It's difficult to read.  
A a lot of B lots C a little D lot
- 3 'I'm so hungry.' 'I have \_\_\_\_\_ biscuits in my bag. Would you like one?'  
A very little B a few C too much D any
- 4 I think I've eaten \_\_\_\_\_ chocolate. I feel sick.  
A too many B lots of C too much D a little
- 5 Do you need \_\_\_\_\_ help?  
A a few B very little C many D any
- 6 I'm sorry, I've got \_\_\_\_\_ money to give you.  
A very little B too many C very few D any

## LANGUAGE IN USE

5 Choose the correct answer, A, B or C.

- 1 There \_\_\_\_\_ supermarkets in my neighbourhood.  
A is little B aren't much C are few
- 2 If you haven't got money for an expensive jacket, you should try to \_\_\_\_\_.  
A pick up a bargain C do some research  
B have a sale
- 3 When Mary goes shopping, she \_\_\_\_\_ attention to prices.  
A pays little B never holds C doesn't attract
- 4 Excuse me, I'm looking for a T-shirt. \_\_\_\_\_.  
A I'm 38. B I'm a size 38. C It's in a size 38.
- 5 If this dress doesn't fit, can I get a \_\_\_\_\_.  
A receipt B refund C bonus

6 Read the text and choose the correct answer, A, B or C.

### Kara's part-time job

Kara, eighteen, has an unusual part-time job. During the week she is a student at university, but at weekends she is a mystery shopper. What does this mean? One day she buys a bottle of \_\_\_\_\_ perfume, another day she goes for a meal in a restaurant. She fills in a form about the shop or restaurant and a report \_\_\_\_\_ to the company's office. This is how the shop or restaurant gets suggestions about how they could improve, to keep customers happy.

'It's the perfect job for me,' explains Kara. 'I love going shopping, even if it's just \_\_\_\_\_ shopping. It's nice to eat in elegant restaurants from time to time as I don't have \_\_\_\_\_ money for food.' Kara has to send her report within twenty-four hours and she \_\_\_\_\_ at the end of each month.

Mystery Magic, the company that employs Kara, says mystery shoppers must be reliable, have a good memory and most importantly, they must be \_\_\_\_\_. 'Mystery shoppers must be fair,' explains one of the company's managers. 'If they tell a lie or exaggerate, we won't use them again.'

- 1 A with B of C full
- 2 A has sent B sends C is sent
- 3 A looking B list C window
- 4 A much B many C few
- 5 A must pay B pays C gets paid
- 6 A creative B honest C mysterious

## READING

7 Read the text and choose the correct answer, A, B, C or D.

### PINK

If you go shopping in any toy shop, you can see clearly the different games and toys for boys and girls: there are a lot of pink princesses and dolls on one side of the shop for girls; and dark-coloured cars, guns and soldiers for boys. Some bigger shops with toys may even have a separate pink floor for girls and a blue floor for boys. In fact, it is difficult to buy a toy for a girl that is not pink.

Some people think that a lot of pink is bad for girls. Also, Sue Palmer, author of *Toxic Childhood*, admits that she is very worried about this. She believes that most girls over the age of three are crazy about the colour. According to some psychologists, this happens for two reasons. Firstly, because most companies offer too many products in pink. But parents can be blamed too, as many think their little daughter looks cute in a pink outfit. Sue Palmer says that girls at this age cannot make rational decisions, but the pink can affect the choices and the decisions they will make in the future.

Some parents are concerned too – for example, Vanessa Holburn, thirty-two, who has two girls under the age of four. Their bedrooms are a sea of pink and Vanessa is not happy. 'Pink says that you are soft and gentle. Blue says that you are strong and powerful. I want my daughters to be strong and powerful. I'm worried that pink will not help them with that,' she says.

But not everyone thinks there's something wrong with pink. Grayson Turner is a father of three girls and he isn't worried at all. 'People forget that things change all the time,' he says. 'My girls used to love pink when they were little, but as they get older, they change.' Turner explains that his twelve-year-old daughter never wears pink clothes anymore. 'This love of pink is just a fashion and all fashions change,' he adds. 'It's only since the 1940s that people have started dressing girls in pink – before that it was a colour for boys.'

- 1 According to the text, toys for boys  
A are usually very similar to toys for girls.  
B cost about the same as toys for girls.  
C are as attractive as toys for girls.  
D are usually very different from toys for girls.
- 2 Vanessa Holburn thinks that boys' toys  
A should be soft and gentle.  
B help boys become strong.  
C aren't good for three-year-olds.  
D shouldn't be blue.
- 3 According to Grayson Turner,  
A parents should not worry so much about pink toys.  
B not all little girls love the colour pink.  
C pink has always been a popular colour.  
D his girls now prefer the colour blue.
- 4 The writer wants to  
A recommend a book by Sue Palmer.  
B make girls stop playing with pink toys.  
C present different opinions about the colour.  
D explain why parents should worry about the colour.

## SPEAKING

8 Your sister is going to stay with an English teenage girl for the summer holidays. She wants to buy a present for the girl. In pairs, talk about the different presents she could buy and then decide which would be best.



## WRITING

9 Match the products (1–4) with the possible problems (a–d). Then add one more problem for each product.

- |                       |                                     |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1 a box of chocolates | a Some pages are missing.           |
| 2 a book              | b The sound quality is bad.         |
| 3 a pair of jeans     | c They are past their sell-by date. |
| 4 an MP3 player       | d They shrink after the first wash. |

10 Read the writing task and choose one of the products from Exercise 9 to write about.

You recently bought a product from an online shop. The shop had assured you that you would receive the product within two days, but you had to wait longer. When you opened the package, it turned out there was a problem with the product as well. Write an email of complaint to the online shop. Include these points.

- Explain what you bought and when.
- Complain about the delay in receiving the parcel.
- Describe the problem with the product.
- Suggest a way to solve the problem.

11 Write your email in 80–130 words.

# 8

## SOCIETY

Ask not what your country  
can do for you; ask what you  
can do for your country.

JOHN FITZGERALD KENNEDY  
(1917–1963), A US PRESIDENT

### UNIT LANGUAGE AND SKILLS

#### Vocabulary:

- Show what you know – politics
- crime and criminals; the justice system
- people involved in a crime case
- antonyms
- word families

#### Grammar:

- Past Perfect
- Reported Speech

#### Listening:

- an interview about lie-spotting

#### Reading:

- a text about the American Civil Rights Movement

#### Speaking:

- expressing and justifying an opinion

#### Writing:

- a reader's comment

### FOCUS EXTRA

- Grammar Focus page 119
- WORD STORE booklet pages 16–17
- Workbook pages 92–103 or MyEnglishLab
- MP3s – www.english.com/focus

## 8.1 Vocabulary

Politics • Crime • The justice system • Society  
*I can talk about crime and punishment.*

### SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

- 1 Complete UK TODAY with the words in the box.

capital crime elections head  
minister monarchy population United

### UK TODAY

- 1 The United Kingdom: England, Wales, Scotland and Northern Ireland
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_: 65 million
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ city: London
- 4 Political system: constitutional \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_ of state: the Queen (of course!)
- 6 Head of government: the prime \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 General \_\_\_\_\_: every five years
- 8 Interesting fact: Nobody is further than 120 km from the sea.
- 9 Surprising fact: It rains more in Milan than in London.
- 10 Young people's worries: youth unemployment, the environment, \_\_\_\_\_

- 2 Write a similar fact file for your own country.

- 3 Read the text and label the crimes in photos A–F with the words in red in the text.
- 4 Read the text again. Which crimes are growing, falling or staying the same in number?
- 5 Which of the crimes mentioned in the text are a problem in your country?

## UK crime trends

In the past burglars used to break into houses to steal TVs and DVD players. But electronic goods are so cheap now that **burglary** has become less and less common.

Thieves are more interested in stealing small personal items like mobile phones and iPods that people carry with them. So there has been a fall in the number of house burglaries and **robberies**, but the number of **muggings** and mobile phone **thefts** has grown. **Shoplifting** and **drug dealing** crimes have grown, just like Internet crimes such as hacking and online **piracy**.

**Murder** rates haven't changed much and car crimes remain high: one in three reported crimes is a **car theft**. In the UK, a car is stolen every twenty-five seconds! Other crimes such as **vandalism** and **arson** have fallen.



Go to WORD STORE 8 page 17.

### WORD STORE 8A

- 6 **CD-3.25 MP3-112** Complete WORD STORE 8A with the base form of the words in red in the text. Then listen, check and repeat.
- 7 **CD-3.26 MP3-113** Listen to six conversations and write the crime they refer to.  
1 \_\_\_\_\_ 3 \_\_\_\_\_ 5 \_\_\_\_\_  
2 \_\_\_\_\_ 4 \_\_\_\_\_ 6 \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 Imagine you have to report a crime. Choose the correct options.  
1 Somebody has robbed / stolen my phone.  
2 My apartment has been stolen / burgled.  
3 Some youths have set fire to / mugged a shop.  
4 My sister has been vandalised / mugged.  
5 There's a man in my store. He's shoplifting / burgling.  
6 My neighbour has just murdered / stolen his wife.
- 9 In pairs, discuss which three crimes in WORD STORE 8A are the most serious. Give reasons for your answers.

### WORD STORE 8B

- 10 Read two crime stories. Why are the crimes described as crazy?

### CRIMINALS COMMIT CRAZY CRIMES

A suspect was **arrested** for robbing a jewellery store on Saturday afternoon. The suspect told police that he was **innocent**. He said that he couldn't be **guilty** of robbing the jewellery store because on Saturday afternoon he was breaking into a school and he had a **witness** to prove it. The police immediately **arrested** him for robbing the school. The **case** goes to court next month.

A thirty-year-old man was **arrested** for **vandalising** a campsite. In **court**, the judge heard how the police caught the **criminal**. 'It was easy,' the police officer said. 'There was no **victim**. We didn't have to interview any witnesses or collect any **evidence**. The man wrote his name on a wall!' The man was **sentenced** to three months in **prison**.

- 11 **CD-3.27 MP3-114** Complete WORD STORE 8B with the words in red in the crime stories in Exercise 10. Then listen, check and repeat.

### WORD STORE 8C

- 12 **CD-3.28 MP3-115** Complete WORD STORE 8C with the underlined words in the crime stories in Exercise 10. Then listen, check and repeat.

## 8.2 Grammar

### Past Perfect

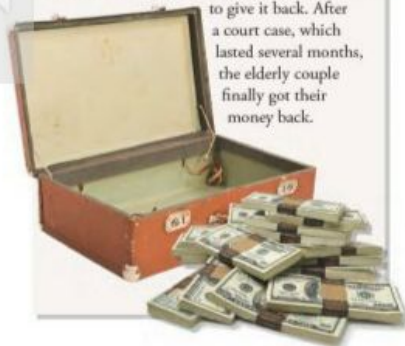
I can use the Past Perfect to talk about past events.

- 1 Read the story. Does it have a happy ending?

#### HOW TO LOSE A FORTUNE



An elderly man donated some things to a charity shop, including an old suitcase. He didn't know that his wife had hidden their life savings – over \$100,000 – in a pocket inside the suitcase! He contacted the charity shop, but they had already sold the suitcase. Luckily, the shop found the buyers through their credit card details. However, the buyers had put the money into different bank accounts and, understandably, they didn't want to give it back. After a court case, which lasted several months, the elderly couple finally got their money back.



- 2 Read the story again and put the events a–g in chronological order 1–7.

- a The old man donated the suitcase.
- b The old man's wife hid the money.
- c The shop found the buyers.
- d The old man contacted the shop.
- e The elderly couple got their money back.
- f The shop sold the suitcase.
- g The buyers put the money into different bank accounts.

- 3 Read the GRAMMAR FOCUS and answer the questions.

- 1 How do you form the Past Perfect?
- 2 When do you use it?

#### GRAMMAR FOCUS

##### Past Perfect

You use the Past Perfect to talk about the earlier of two actions in the past.

He contacted the shop, but they had already sold the suitcase.



##### Past Perfect: had + past participle

- + I had ('d) worked.
- He had not (hadn't) worked.
- ? Had they worked?
- Yes, they had./No, they hadn't.

- 4 Underline all the examples of the Past Perfect in the text in Exercise 1.

- 5 Look at the sentence pairs. In each sentence, underline the action that happened first.

- 1 a When I got home yesterday, my mum had made dinner.
- b When I got home yesterday, my mum made dinner.
- 2 a When I got to school this morning, I had breakfast.
- b When I got to school this morning, I'd had breakfast.
- 3 a This lesson started when I arrived.
- b This lesson had started when I arrived.

- 6 Complete the sentences with the correct Past Simple or Past Perfect form of the verbs in brackets.

- 1 Dave suddenly \_\_\_\_\_ (remember) that he \_\_\_\_\_ (not lock) his apartment.
- 2 When the police \_\_\_\_\_ (arrive) at the house, the burglar \_\_\_\_\_ (disappear).
- 3 The police \_\_\_\_\_ (arrest) a man after they \_\_\_\_\_ (search) his apartment.
- 4 Julie \_\_\_\_\_ (not recognise) the suspect because he \_\_\_\_\_ (grow) a beard.
- 5 Sophie \_\_\_\_\_ (feel) nervous because she \_\_\_\_\_ (not appear) in court before.
- 6 The crime scene \_\_\_\_\_ (be) covered in water. What \_\_\_\_\_ (happen)?
- 7 When she \_\_\_\_\_ (get) home, the police \_\_\_\_\_ (already/ call) her three times.
- 8 They \_\_\_\_\_ (live) there for many years before they \_\_\_\_\_ (find out) the terrible truth.

- 7 Look at the example and write six similar Past Perfect sentences about you. Use verb phrases from the box or your own ideas.

By the age of six, I had learnt how to swim.

buy/get my first phone/laptop/bike  
go to the capital city/a foreign country/a live concert  
learn how to read/swim/ski

## 8.3 Listening

### Multiple choice

I can identify specific detail in an interview.

- 1 CD-3.29 MP3-116 Complete the expressions about body language in the pictures with the words in the box. Then listen, check and repeat.

arms eyebrows eyes  
hair nails something



- 2 Which types of body language from Exercise 1 do you think can show a person is lying? Discuss in pairs, giving reasons for your answers.

- 3 CD-3.30 MP3-117 Listen to an interview with expert 'lie spotter' Martin Johnson and answer the questions.

- 1 Which type of body language from Exercise 1 shows that a person is lying?
- 2 What other things do liars do or say?
- 3 How many lies does an average person tell in a day?

### EXAM FOCUS Multiple choice

- 4 CD-3.30 MP3-117 Listen again. For questions 1–6, choose the correct answer, A, B or C.

- 1 Martin Johnson became interested in the subject of lying when
  - A he started working for the police.
  - B he was at university.
  - C he was in business.
- 2 A genuine smile affects
  - A the sides of your mouth.
  - B your whole face.
  - C your eyes only.
- 3 Liars often
  - A look you in the eyes for too long.
  - B look at your mouth.
  - C look out of the window.
- 4 What is also true about liars?
  - A They don't give you much information.
  - B They tell you about their home.
  - C They give you too much detail.
- 5 Men and women
  - A lie for different reasons.
  - B are always honest about how they look.
  - C never lie to teenagers.
- 6 Martin Johnson
  - A isn't employed to identify serious lies.
  - B has written a book about lying.
  - C has got a very boring job.

- 5 Write three things about you – two true and one false. In pairs, take turns to read the information to your partner. Can he/she spot which is a lie?

### PRONUNCIATION FOCUS

- 6 CD-3.31 MP3-118 Listen and repeat.

Diphthong	Example
1 /aɪ/	eye
2 /eɪ/	face
3 /oʊ/	mouth
4 /ɔɪ/	voice
5 /aʊ/	
6 /eə/	
7 /aɪ/	
8 /aʊ/	

- 7 CD-3.32 MP3-119 Complete the table in Exercise 6 with the words in the box. Then listen, check and repeat.

ear	eye	face	hair
mouth	nose	sure	voice

### WORD STORE 8D

- 8 CD-3.33 MP3-120 Complete WORD STORE 8D. Add words to the table. Mark the stress. Then listen, check and repeat.

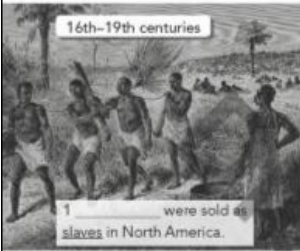
## 8.4 Reading

### True/False

I can find specific detail in an article.

- 1 Look at the pictures and complete the captions with the names in the box. Check the meaning of the underlined words in a dictionary.

Abraham Lincoln Africans Barack Obama Billie Holiday  
Martin Luther King the Civil Rights Movement



16th–19th centuries

1 \_\_\_\_\_ were sold as slaves in North America.



1865

2 \_\_\_\_\_ ordered an end to slavery.



1920s, 30s and 40s

3 \_\_\_\_\_ and other famous black singers sang about racism.



1950s and 60s

4 \_\_\_\_\_ fought against segregation.



1964

5 \_\_\_\_\_ got the Nobel Peace Prize for his work against racial discrimination.



2008

6 \_\_\_\_\_ became the first African American president of the USA.

- 2 **CD 3.34 MP3-121** Listen to the beginning of a class presentation about Martin Luther King and check your answers to Exercise 1. Then answer the questions.

- How long did slavery exist in North America?
- Who led the Civil Rights Movement?
- Why was the election of Barack Obama so significant?

- 3 Read the text about the American Civil Rights Movement. What happened on these dates?

1865 1870 1955  
1963 1964 1968

### EXAM FOCUS True/False

- 4 Read the text again. Are statements 1–6 true (T) or false (F)?

- African Americans started fighting for their rights in 1955. ☐
- Black American men were allowed to vote for the first time a few years after slavery ended. ☐
- In the 1950s it was impossible for black and white people to sit together in a restaurant. ☐
- Linda Brown couldn't go to her neighbourhood school because she wasn't white. ☐
- Rosa Parks was arrested for sitting next to a white man on a bus. ☐
- Martin Luther King made over 3,000 speeches in the thirteen-year period before his death. ☐

- 5 Match 1–6 with a–f to make compound nouns from the text. Then find an example sentence for each one in the text or write your own.

- |           |             |
|-----------|-------------|
| 1 African | a transport |
| 2 civil   | b trade     |
| 3 human   | c rights    |
| 4 public  | d race      |
| 5 slave   | e Court     |
| 6 Supreme | f American  |

African Americans became citizens of the USA after the end of slavery.

- 6 Do you think Martin Luther King's dream is now a reality anywhere in the world? Discuss in pairs.

### WORD STORE 8E

- 7 **CD 3.34 MP3-122** Complete WORD STORE 8E with the appropriate nouns and verbs. Mark the stress. Then listen, check and repeat.

## THE AMERICAN CIVIL RIGHTS MOVEMENT

**CD 3.34 MP3-122**

The African American Civil Rights Movement took place in the USA between 1955 and 1968. But African Americans had fought for freedom and justice for many years before that.

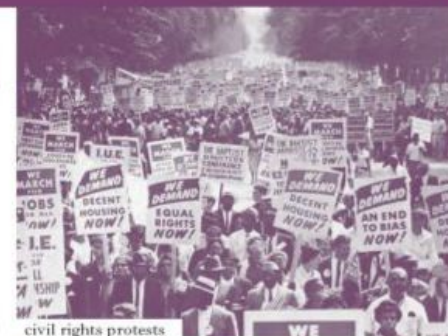
### The need for a Civil Rights Movement

In 1865 Abraham Lincoln declared the end of slavery. After this African Americans became full citizens of the USA and in 1870 men were given the right to vote. However, in the first half of the twentieth century racism against the black community was a huge social problem. In the 1950s racial segregation still existed: black people couldn't attend the same schools as white people; black and white people were separated on trains and buses and in other public areas such as restaurants and movie theaters.

### Two key events

In the early 1950s in Kansas, a young black girl, Linda Brown, applied to a school near her house, but she wasn't accepted. Instead, she had to travel a long way to a black-only school. She became famous when her father fought against the local Board of Education. Finally, the US Supreme Court agreed to stop segregation in public schools. Their victory helped all black children to get a better education.

In 1955 a forty-two-year-old black woman, Rosa Parks, sat near the front of a crowded bus in Alabama and refused to give up her seat to a white man. Police were called and Rosa was put in prison. Rosa's actions inspired the black community to support the Civil Rights Movement. With Martin Luther King as their leader, they refused to use public transport for more than a year, until segregation on buses was stopped.



civil rights protests



Rosa Parks

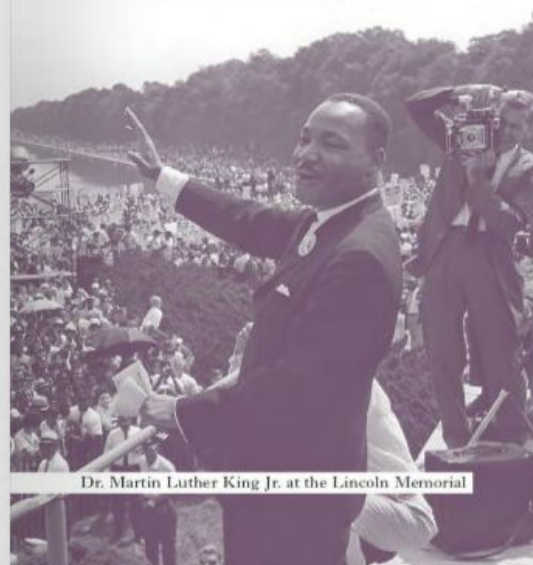
### Dr. Martin Luther King Jr.

Martin Luther King was one of the leaders of the Civil Rights Movement. He said, 'We are tired of being segregated and humiliated.'

He believed that all men and women, black or white, are equal members of the human race. Between 1955 and 1968 he travelled over six million miles and made more than 3,000 speeches. In August 1963 he gave his famous 'I Have a Dream' speech at the Lincoln Memorial in Washington, D.C. Over 250,000 people heard him say:

*'I have a dream that my four little children will one day live in a nation where they will not be judged by the color of their skin, but by the content of their character. I have a dream today.'*

In 1964 King was awarded the Nobel Peace Prize for his work to end racial discrimination. Tragically, on 4 April 1968 Martin Luther King was assassinated. He was thirty-nine years old.



Dr. Martin Luther King Jr. at the Lincoln Memorial

## 8.5 Grammar

### Reported Speech

*I can report what other people have said.*

- 1 Read this true story and write what happened at these times.

- yesterday
- five years ago
- two weeks ago
- before that

## Mystery German forest boy

Yesterday a boy walked out of a German forest. He spoke fluent English and broken German. He told the police that his first name was Ray and he was probably fifteen. He said his father had died two weeks ago and he had buried him in the forest. He also told them that he had lived in the forest for about five years, but he couldn't remember anything about his life before that. The police told reporters that Berlin Youth Services were looking after him until they could find out his identity.



- 2 Compare these direct statements with the reported statements in blue in the text. What changes have been made to the verb forms and pronouns?

- 1 'My first name is Ray and I'm probably fifteen.'
- 2 'My father died two weeks ago.'
- 3 'I've lived in the forest for about five years.'
- 4 'I can't remember anything.'
- 5 'Berlin Youth Services are looking after him.'

- 3 Read the GRAMMAR FOCUS. Then complete the examples with the correct verb forms.

### GRAMMAR FOCUS

#### Reported Speech

In Reported Speech verb forms and pronouns change depending on the context.

Direct Speech	→	Reported Speech
Present Simple	→	Past Simple
<i>'I work,' she said.</i>		<i>She said she worked.</i>
Present Continuous	→	Past Continuous
<i>'He's working,' we said.</i>		<i>We said he <sup>1</sup> _____.</i>
Present Perfect	→	Past Perfect
<i>'We've worked,' he said.</i>		<i>He said they <sup>2</sup> _____.</i>
Past Simple	→	Past Perfect
<i>'She worked,' they said.</i>		<i>They said she <sup>3</sup> _____.</i>

### REMEMBER THIS

say (that)

*He said his father had died two weeks ago.*  
*tell somebody (that)*  
*He told the police (that) his first name was Ray.*

- 4 Six months later, the Berlin police were interviewed about Ray. Report their statements. Begin with *They said ...*

- 1 'We looked everywhere for information about Ray.'
- 2 'We put a photo of him in newspapers around Europe.'
- 3 'His school friends in Holland saw the photo and contacted us.'
- 4 'We now know that Ray's real name is Robin van Helsum.'
- 5 'He is going back home very soon.'
- 6 'His lies have cost the German police over £20,000.'

- 5 Choose the correct options.

- 1 My teacher said / told me I wasn't concentrating.
- 2 He said / told I looked tired.
- 3 I said / told him that I hadn't slept very well.
- 4 I said / told I had watched a really scary film.
- 5 I said / told him that was why I hadn't done my homework.
- 6 He said / told I'd used that excuse before!

- 6 Rewrite the sentences in Exercise 5 in Direct Speech.

- 1 *'You aren't concentrating.'*

- 7 In pairs, take turns to tell your partner five true things about you. Choose from the box or use your own ideas.

I am/am not tired.  
 I can/can't snowboard.  
 I like/don't like politics.  
 I've been/haven't been to London.  
 I'm going out/not going out tonight.  
 I watched/didn't watch TV last night.

- 8 How many facts can you remember about your partner? Report what he/she said.

- A: *You said you could snowboard.*  
 B: Yes, that's right.  
 A: *You said you liked politics.*  
 B: No, I said I didn't like politics.

Grammar Focus page 119

## 8.6 Speaking

### Expressing and justifying an opinion

*I can choose from options and justify my choice.*

- 1 Do you think this anti-drugs poster is effective? In pairs, discuss which of these ideas could be effective in an anti-drug campaign.

- shocking images of drug addicts
- information and facts about the effects of drugs
- information and facts about prison sentences

### WAYS TO SAY NO TO DRUGS:

- No.
- No, thank you.
- I don't want to.
- I'm not interested.
- I have other things to do.

- 2 CD-3.37 MP3-124 Listen to Anna and David discussing anti-drugs posters. Who prefers a poster with facts and who prefers one with images?

- 3 CD-3.37 MP3-124 Read the SPEAKING FOCUS and complete the conversation. Then listen again and check.

A: Have you seen the new anti-drugs poster at the bus stop?  
 D: No. What's it like?

A: The poster <sup>1</sup> shows a woman's face. Her skin is white and spotty and her eyes are dead.

D: Do you think it's a good poster?

A: Well, on the one <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, it looks shocking, but on the other <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, it doesn't look real. I don't <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ it very convincing.

D: Hm, I know what you mean. I don't <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ posters like that <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ they're only shocking the first time you see them. I <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ posters that give some information and statistics. I <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ it's important to know that you can go to prison for a long time if you use illegal drugs!

A: I <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ think statistics are <sup>10</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ good as a shocking image. I think the <sup>11</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ disadvantage of statistics is that you have to stop and read them. Most people don't have time.

D: That's true. The best poster I've seen was a photo of a young guy in prison. He was sentenced to ten years for dealing drugs. To <sup>12</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ mind, that was more shocking than a girl's face because it was a true story.

### SPEAKING FOCUS

#### Describing a picture

The poster shows ...

On the one hand, ..., but on the other hand, ...

#### Justifying your choice and rejecting other options

✓ I prefer ...

✗ I don't like ... because ...

✗ I don't find it very convincing/interesting/shocking, etc.

#### Giving your opinion

To my mind, ... I think it's important to ...

I think the main advantage/disadvantage is that ...

I don't think ... is/are as good/useful/effective, etc. as ...

- 4 CD-3.38 MP3-125 Look at the posters. What message do they have in common? Listen and number them in the order you hear about them.



- 5 Your school is organising a campaign about mobile phone theft and the students are going to help choose a poster for it. In pairs, talk about the posters above and decide which would work best for the campaign. Follow the instructions below and use the SPEAKING FOCUS to help you. Then present your choice to the class.

- Say why you like or don't like the posters.
- Say which you think would be best and why.

## 8.7 Writing

### A reader's comment

*I can give and support my opinion in writing.*

- 1 Look at the photo. In pairs, talk about graffiti. Is it vandalism or art?
- 2 Read the article from a news website. How does the writer answer the question in the title?

### Newsfocus: daily discussion

#### Graffiti: Street art or crime?

Yesterday five members of a graffiti gang were sentenced to eighteen months in prison for damaging public property. The judge said that the damage had cost the government at least £1 million. The question must be asked about the people who spray graffiti: are they artists or vandals?

*Personally, I believe that* street art is a form of art. *However*, it is illegal to paint on public or private property without permission. Local councils spend millions of pounds each year cleaning graffiti and this means that taxes go up.

*For this reason*, I agree that the gang of graffiti artists should get prison sentences. When the judge sent the graffiti artists to prison, he gave a clear message to other graffiti artists: you think you are expressing yourself, but you are also committing a crime, and *what is more*, you could go to prison.

Join the daily discussion and tell us what you think in our Readers' comments section below.

**daisy345 says:** Thank you for your excellent article. I found it interesting because it shows that street art ...

- 3 Complete the WRITING FOCUS with the linkers in purple in the article.

### WRITING FOCUS

#### A reader's comment

When you give your opinion in a piece of writing such as a reader's comment, use linkers to:

- give an opinion: I think that/<sup>1</sup>*Personally*, I believe that ...
- add further points: In fact/I also agree that/ I also think that/<sup>2</sup> ..., ...
- give an opposite opinion: On the other hand, I strongly disagree /<sup>3</sup> ..., ...
- conclude: Therefore /So/That's why/<sup>4</sup> ..., ...

- 4 Read and complete the reader's comment on the article in Exercise 2 with phrases from the WRITING FOCUS. The first letter of each word is given.

**daisy345 says:** Thank you for your excellent article. I found it interesting because it shows that street art can be called 'vandalism' or 'free expression', depending on your point of view.

<sup>1</sup>*Personally*, I b \_\_\_\_\_ t \_\_\_\_\_ street art is a form of art. <sup>2</sup>I \_\_\_\_\_ f \_\_\_\_\_, there are some famous street artists who sell their work for a lot of money. I also <sup>3</sup>a \_\_\_\_\_ t \_\_\_\_\_ people who do graffiti are committing a crime. On the one hand, I think they should be punished. On <sup>4</sup>t \_\_\_\_\_ o \_\_\_\_\_ h \_\_\_\_\_, I strongly disagree with your opinion that they should go to prison. These people are not dangerous criminals. They have vandalised public property and <sup>5</sup>t \_\_\_\_\_ they should clean the graffiti and do community service.

- 5 Read the reader's comment again and answer the questions.

- 1 Which two opinions do both writers agree on?
- 2 Which opinion do they disagree about?
- 3 Who do you agree with? Why?

- 6 Match opinions 1–3 with the follow-up sentences a–c.

- 1 Personally, I believe that people who throw litter in the streets are committing a crime.
  - 2 I strongly disagree with those who say that people who take drugs should go to prison for a long time.
  - 3 I really think that rich people who don't pay their taxes should spend a long time doing some work for their community.
- a What is more, I think they should give half their money to charity!  
b In my opinion it's the people who sell them that should go to prison.  
c For this reason, I think they should pay a big fine and have to pick up dirty bags every day for a month.

- 7 Read the titles for discussion articles below. Write two sentences giving your opinion on each one. Use these phrases.

- Personally, I believe that ...
- I also think that ...
- I strongly disagree that ...
- I agree that ...
- That's true. However, ...

### Newsfocus: daily discussion

Hacking isn't a real crime.

### Newsfocus: daily discussion

Pickpockets should be sent to prison.

### Newsfocus: daily discussion

Everyone downloads music and films now; it isn't a problem.

## Writing task

You have just read the article below on a news website. Write a reader's comment for the website.

### Newsfocus: daily discussion

#### Celebrity shoplifting: crime or illness?

Yesterday a judge sentenced a Hollywood star to six months in prison for stealing jewellery worth \$5,000. The celebrity could easily afford to buy the necklace, so the question must be asked: is she a criminal or is she sick?

Personally, I believe that rich people who steal from shops are sick. Shoplifting is like a drug for these people. However, shoplifting is a crime and therefore the celebrity broke the law.

For this reason, I think the judge made the right decision.

Join the daily discussion and tell us what you think in our Readers' comments section below.

- A Write your comment in 80–130 words. Include these points.

- Give your opinion on the article.
- Say what you agree with and why.
- Say what you disagree with and why.
- Write your conclusion.

### Useful language

- I found the article interesting/boring/controversial.
- I strongly believe that ... because ...
- Contrary to what was said in the article, I think that ...
- I agree/disagree with the opinion in the article.
- Another reason why I disagree/agree is that ...

- B Use the ideas in the WRITING FOCUS and the model to help you.

- C Check.

- ✓ Have you included all the points in the question?
- ✓ Have you used linkers from the WRITING FOCUS?
- ✓ Have you divided your comment into paragraphs?
- ✓ Have you checked your grammar and spelling?

# FOCUS REVIEW 8

## VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

### 1 Choose the correct options.

- The thief robbed / mugged / stole my wallet.
- The police have collected an important piece of identity / evidence / truth: a knife covered in blood.
- Lots of young people don't have jobs and the level of racism / unemployment / sexism is still increasing.
- The head / capital / major city of France is Paris.
- Don't bite / fiddle / blink your nails! It's disgusting.
- A witness / police officer / judge decides on sentences in court.

### 2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in capitals.

- The \_\_\_\_\_ tried to hide the DVD under his coat, but a police officer saw him. **SHOPLIFT**
- Tom faced total \_\_\_\_\_ when Fern told all their friends about his lies. **HUMILIATE**
- The \_\_\_\_\_ got a four-year sentence for setting fire to the department store. **ARSON**
- Racial \_\_\_\_\_ is still a big problem in many countries today. **DISCRIMINATE**
- If you have ever downloaded music illegally, you have committed online \_\_\_\_\_. **PIRATE**

### 3 Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first.

- The police officer chased the criminal for ten minutes, then he caught him.  
The police officer \_\_\_\_\_ the criminal for ten minutes before he \_\_\_\_\_ him.
- The thief burgled the flat, then escaped through an open window.  
After the thief \_\_\_\_\_ the flat, she \_\_\_\_\_ through an open window.
- Someone stole my purse before I got home.  
When I \_\_\_\_\_ home, I realised that somebody \_\_\_\_\_ my purse.
- He spent a year in prison, then his sentence ended.  
He \_\_\_\_\_ a year in prison by the time his sentence \_\_\_\_\_.
- Marie robbed ten banks before she was arrested.  
Marie \_\_\_\_\_ after she \_\_\_\_\_ ten banks.

### 4 Report the statements.

- 'I feel ill,' said Eva.  
Eva said \_\_\_\_\_.
- 'I've contacted the police, Jon,' said Reece.  
Reece told Jon that \_\_\_\_\_.
- 'I found the weapon in the kitchen,' said the detective.  
The detective said \_\_\_\_\_.
- 'I'm waiting for the court case to end, Tim,' said Jo.  
Jo told Tim that \_\_\_\_\_.
- 'I didn't go out last night,' she said.  
She said \_\_\_\_\_.

## LANGUAGE IN USE

### 5 Choose the correct answer, A, B or C.

- A: Is the new anti-drugs campaign any good?  
B: \_\_\_\_\_ it's not clear what they want to say.  
A To my mind, C On the other hand,  
B The main advantage is that
- A: What will happen if the court decides he \_\_\_\_\_?  
B: He will be able to go home freely.  
A has committed a crime C is not guilty  
B might be a suspect
- A: Have the police caught the bank robber?  
B: Well, yesterday they said that they \_\_\_\_\_ the robber for three weeks! Can you believe it?  
A haven't seen B didn't see C hadn't seen
- A: I don't think that community service is a good form of punishment.  
B: Why not? I think it's \_\_\_\_\_ a prison sentence.  
A as effective as C less useful than  
B important to get
- A: Did you ask him about the robbery?  
B: Yes, but he didn't \_\_\_\_\_ me the truth. He lied as usual.  
A say B tell C speak
- A: Why did you phone the police?  
B: Because when I got back home from Fiji, I realised someone \_\_\_\_\_ into my house during my holiday.  
A broke B was breaking C had broken

### 6 Choose the correct option, A, B or C, to complete both sentences.

- Burglars \_\_\_\_\_ into shops and houses.  
People who \_\_\_\_\_ the law should be punished.  
A enter B break C commit
- I can't read this \_\_\_\_\_. His handwriting is difficult to read.  
The prime minister got a two-year \_\_\_\_\_ for corruption.  
A letter B decision C sentence
- I'm sure she'll just \_\_\_\_\_ her arms and get really angry when she hears the news.  
To get to the police station, you have to \_\_\_\_\_ the bridge and then turn left.  
A cross B follow C raise
- She could swim \_\_\_\_\_ the age of three.  
It's common to judge people \_\_\_\_\_ the way they look.  
A before B at C by
- Her case has just gone \_\_\_\_\_ court.  
He was arrested for setting fire \_\_\_\_\_ ten cars.  
A to B in C for

## LISTENING

### 7 CD 3.39 MP3 1.26 Listen to six extracts from a conversation and choose the correct answer, A, B or C.

- The conversation takes place  
A at the man's house.  
B in a garage.  
C at a police station.
- The speaker is  
A a police officer.  
B a professional musician.  
C a radio presenter.
- How will the boy get home?  
A by bus  
B by car  
C on foot
- The woman is  
A explaining something.  
B criticising someone.  
C asking people to do something.
- How many young people are unemployed?  
A forty-nine percent  
B six percent  
C twenty-five percent
- The text does not mention  
A when the criminal robbed the bank.  
B where the police found the criminal.  
C what the criminal stole.

## SPEAKING

### 8 Match the two halves of the questions. Then, in pairs, ask and answer the questions.

- Would you like to work as \_\_\_\_\_
  - Do you like reading \_\_\_\_\_
  - What qualities do you need \_\_\_\_\_
  - What would you do \_\_\_\_\_
- a to be a judge? Why?  
b crime stories? Why?/Why not?  
c if you lost your mobile phone?  
d a police officer? Why?/Why not?

### 9 In pairs, discuss and choose the best poster for a campaign against crimes on teenagers.



### 10 In pairs, discuss these questions.

- What can you do to prevent being a victim of crime?
- Do you think that people feel safer when they see a lot of police officers in the streets? Why?/Why not?
- What would you do if you suspected that someone was breaking into your house at night?
- Do you think secondary school students should learn about the law? Why?/Why not?

## WRITING

### 11 Read the writing task. Tick three points from the list that you might include in your story. Then add one more idea of your own.

- where and when Grace saw the photo
- how long she had to wait to catch the bus
- how she followed the boy when he got off the bus
- why she phoned someone on her mobile

Your teacher has asked you to write a story. Your story must begin with this sentence:

Grace was on the bus and she saw a young boy just like the photo on the news.

### 12 Write your story in about 100 words.

# 01 WORD LIST • PERSONALITY

## Personality

able to /'eɪbəl tə/  
adorable /ə'dɔːrəbəl/  
ambitious /æm'bɪʃəs/  
arrogant /'ærəɡənt/  
bad-tempered /'bæd təmpəd/  
boring /'bɔːrɪŋ/  
brave /breɪv/  
bravery /'breɪvəri/  
caring /'keərɪŋ/  
cheerful /'tʃiːəfəl/  
clever /'kleɪvə/  
confident /'kɒnfɪdənt/  
cooperative /kəʊ'pɒrətɪv/  
cowardly /'kaʊədli/  
crazy /'kreɪzi/  
dishonest /dɪ'sɒnəst/  
disloyal /dɪ'sləʊəl/  
dull /dʌl/  
emotional /ɪ'məʊʃənəl/  
energetic /'enə'dʒetɪk/  
enthusiastic /ɪn'tʃuːzjəstɪk/  
experienced /ɪk'spiəriənst/  
fair /feɪ/  
fit /fɪt/  
friendly /'frendli/  
funny /'fʌni/  
generosity /dʒenə'reɪsəti/  
generous /dʒenərəs/  
good at /'ɡʊd ət/  
grumpy /'ɡrʌmpɪ/  
hard-working /'hɑːd wɜːkɪŋ/  
helpful /'helpfəl/  
honest /'ɒnəst/  
inexperienced /ɪnɪk'spiəriənst/  
insensitive /ɪn'sensətɪv/  
interesting /'ɪntərɪstɪŋ/  
irresponsible /ɪrɪ'spɒnsəbəl/  
kind /kaɪnd/  
laziness /'leɪzɪnəs/  
lazy /'leɪzi/  
loyal /'ləʊəl/  
loyalty /'ləʊəlti/  
mean /miːn/  
miserable /'mɪzərəbəl/  
modest /'mɒdəst/  
modesty /'mɒdəstɪ/  
negative about /'neɡətɪv əbaʊt/  
optimistic /'ɒptɪ'mɪstɪk/  
outgoing /'aʊt'ɡəʊɪŋ/  
pessimistic /'pesɪ'mɪstɪk/  
popular /'pɒpjələ/  
positive /'pɒzətɪv/  
responsibility /rɪ'spɒnsə'bɪləti/  
responsible for /rɪ'spɒnsəbəl fɔː/  
selfish /'selfɪʃ/  
sensible /'sensəbəl/  
sensitive to /'sensətɪv tə/  
serious /'sɪəriəs/  
shy /ʃaɪ/  
sociable /'səʊʃəbəl/  
stupid /'stjuːpɪd/  
successful /sək'sesfəl/  
uncommunicative /ʌn'kɒmjʊnɪkətɪv/  
uncooperative /ʌn'kəʊ'pɒrətɪv/  
unfair /ʌn'feɪ/  
unfit /ʌn'fɪt/  
unhelpful /ʌn'helpfəl/  
unkind /ʌn'kaɪnd/  
unpopular /ʌn'pɒpjələ/  
unsuccessful /ʌnsək'sesfəl/

## Feelings and emotions

bad mood /'bæd muːd/  
crazy about /'kreɪzi əbaʊt/  
disappointed with /dɪsə'pɔɪntəd wɪθ/  
inspired by /ɪn'spaɪəd baɪ/  
interested in /ɪn'trɪstəd ɪn/  
involved in /ɪn'vɒlvəd ɪn/  
keen on /'kiːn ɒn/  
obsessed with /əb'sesəd wɪθ/  
passionate about /'pæʃənət əbaʊt/  
serious about /'sɪəriəs əbaʊt/

## Clothes

casual clothes /'kæʒʊəl 'klaʊðz/  
designer clothes /dɪ'zainə klaʊðz/  
hoodie /'hʊdi/  
jacket /'dʒækt/  
skinny jeans /'skɪni 'dʒiːnz/  
suit /suːt/  
sweatpants /'swetpænts/  
tie /taɪ/  
uniform /'juːnɪfɔːm/  
winter coat /'wɪntə 'kəʊt/

## Other

adapt to /ə'dæpt tə/  
admire /əd'maɪə/  
argue /'ɑːɡjuː/  
avoid /ə'vɔɪd/  
can't afford /kæn't ə'fɔːd/  
can't stand doing /kæn't stænd 'duːɪŋ/  
care about /'keə əbaʊt/  
charity /'tʃerɪti/  
developing country /dɪ'veləpɪŋ 'kʌntri/  
elderly /'eldəli/  
experience /ɪk'spiəriəns/  
get a job /get ə 'dʒɒb/  
have sth in common /hæv sʌmθɪŋ ɪn 'kɒmən/  
healthy /'helθi/  
homeless /'haʊmles/  
housework /'haʊswɜːk/  
human rights /'hjuːmən 'raɪts/  
identity /aɪ'dentəti/  
impress /ɪm'pres/  
inspire /ɪn'spaɪə/  
make a good impression /meɪk ə ɡʊd ɪm'preʃən/  
opportunity /'ɒpə'tjuːnəti/  
peace /piːs/  
priority /praɪ'ɒrəti/  
prison /'prɪzən/  
refuse to do sth /rɪ'fjuːz tə duː sʌmθɪŋ/  
role model /'rəʊl mɒdl/  
spend money on /spend 'mʌni ɒn/  
spend time /spend 'taɪm/  
stereotype /'stɪərɪətaɪp/  
survey /sə'veɪ/  
take risks /teɪk 'rɪks/  
team-player /'tiːm pleɪə/  
unhealthy /ʌn'helθi/  
voluntary work /vɒlən'təri wɜːk/  
volunteer /vɒlən'tɪə/

# 02 WORD LIST • INVENTION

## Inventions

antibiotics /ˌæntɪbaɪ'ɒtɪks/  
camera /'kæməɾə/  
communications satellite /kə'mjuːnɪ'keɪʃnz sətelaɪt/  
credit card /'kredɪt kɑːd/  
GPS /dʒiː piː 'es/  
jet engine /'dʒet ɛndʒɪn/  
mobile phone /'məʊbaɪl 'fəʊn/  
nuclear power /'njuːklɪə 'paʊə/  
radar /'reɪdər/  
refrigerator /rɪ'frɪdʒəreɪtər/  
robot /'rəʊbɒt/  
television /'telɪvɪʒən/  
washing machine /'wɒʃɪŋ mə'ʃiːn/

## Computers and phones

attach a photo /ə'tætʃ ə 'fəʊtəʊ/  
battery /'bætəri/  
blog /blɒɡ/  
broadband /'brɒdbænd/  
click on (an icon) /klɪk ɒn (ən 'aɪkən)/  
crash /kræʃ/  
desktop computer /'desktp kəm'pjʊtər/  
digital /'dɪdʒəl/  
document /'dɒkjʊmənt/  
download music /daʊn'lɒd 'mjuːzɪk/  
e-book /iː bʊk/  
e-link /iː lɪŋk/  
electronic /elɪk'trɒnɪk/  
email /iː meɪl/  
follow sb on Twitter /fɒləʊ sʌmbədɪ ɒn 'twɪtər/  
go dead /ɡəʊ 'ded/  
go online /ɡəʊ ɒn'laɪn/  
hang up /hæŋ 'ʌp/  
icon /'aɪkən/  
Internet server /'ɪntənət sɜːvər/  
keyboard /'kiːbɔːd/  
laptop /'læptɒp/  
log on /lɒɡ ɒn/  
menu /'menjuː/  
mouse /maʊs/  
open a document /əʊpən ə 'dɒkjʊmənt/  
password /'paʊswɜːd/  
scanner /'skænər/  
screen /skriːn/  
scroll up/down /skrɔːl ʌp/'daʊn/  
search engine /sɜːtʃ ɛndʒɪn/  
social networking site /səʊʃəl 'netwɜːkɪŋ saɪt/  
switch on /swɪtʃ ɒn/  
text message /'tekst məsɪdʒ/  
tweet /twiːt/  
update your profile /ʌp'det jɔː 'prəʊfaɪl/  
username /'juːzənəɪm/  
virus /'vaɪərəs/  
visit a website /vɪzɪt ə 'websaɪt/

## Science

analyse /'ænaləɪz/  
analysis /ə'naləsɪs/  
archaeologist /'ɑːki'ɒlədʒɪst/  
archaeology /'ɑːki'ɒlədʒi/  
chemicals /'kemɪkəlz/  
chemist /'kemɪst/  
chemistry /'kemɪstri/  
collect evidence /kə'lekt 'eɪdəns/  
data /'deɪtə/  
discover /dɪs'kʌvər/  
discovery /dɪs'kʌvəri/  
do experiments /duː ɪk'sperɪmənts/  
do research /duː rɪ'sɜːtʃ/  
ecologist /'ekələdʒɪst/  
ecology /'ekələdʒi/  
engineer /'endʒɪ'niə/

environment /ɪn'vaɪrənmənt/  
evolution /ˌiːvə'ljuːʃən/  
evolve /ɪ'velv/  
exploration /ˌeksplə'reɪʃən/  
explore /ɪk'splɔː/  
find a cure /faɪnd ə 'kjʊə/  
geologist /dʒi'ɒlədʒɪst/  
geology /dʒi'ɒlədʒi/  
global warming /ɡləʊbəl 'wɜːmɪŋ/  
imagination /ɪ'mædʒə'neɪʃən/  
imagine /ɪ'mædʒɪn/  
make a discovery /meɪk ə dɪs'kʌvəri/  
(marine) biologist /(mə,rɪn) baɪ'ɒlədʒɪst/  
(marine) biology /(mə,rɪn) baɪ'ɒlədʒi/  
mathematician /ˌmæθə'mætɪʃən/  
mathematics /ˌmæθə'mætɪks/  
nature /'neɪtʃə/  
observation /ˌɒbzə'veɪʃən/  
observe /əb'zɜːv/  
oxygen /'ɒksɪdʒən/  
physicist /'fɪzɪsɪst/  
physics /'fɪzɪks/  
preservation /ˌprezə'veɪʃən/  
preserve /preɪ'zɜːv/  
protect /prə'tekt/  
protection /prə'tekʃən/  
researcher /rɪ'sɜːtʃər/  
science /saɪəns/  
scientist /saɪəntɪst/  
solution /sə'ljuːʃən/  
solve /sɒlv/  
technology /tek'nɒlədʒi/

## Space exploration

astronaut /'æstrənɒt/  
astronomy /ə'strɒnəmi/  
atmosphere /'ætməsfɪə/  
black hole /blæk 'həʊl/  
capsule /'kæpsjʊl/  
commander /kə'mændər/  
explosion /ɪk'spləʊʒən/  
fuel tank /'fjuːəl tæŋk/  
gravity /'ɡrævəti/  
hatch /hætʃ/  
launch /lɒntʃ/  
mission control /mɪʃən kən'trɒl/  
moon /muːn/  
on board /ɒn 'bɔːd/  
orbit /'ɔːbɪt/  
parachute /'pærəʃaʊt/  
planet /'plænɪt/  
space /speɪs/  
spacecraft /'speɪs-kraʊt/  
splash down /splæʃ 'daʊn/

## Other

breathe a sigh of relief /briːð ə saɪəv rɪ'liːf/  
carry out /kæri 'aʊt/  
cheer /tʃɪə/  
come up with /kəm 'ʌp wɪθ/  
figure out /fɪɡər 'aʊt/  
find a solution /faɪnd ə sə'ljuːʃən/  
fix a problem /fiks ə 'prɒbləm/  
follow events /fɒləʊ 'iːvnts/  
get home /get 'həʊm/  
go crazy /ɡəʊ 'kreɪzi/  
on duty /ɒn 'djuːti/  
raise your hand /reɪz jɔː 'hænd/  
run out /rʌn 'aʊt/  
spend hours /spend 'aʊəz/

## 03 WORD LIST • THE ARTS

### Art

abstract /'æbstrækt/  
art gallery /'a:rt ɡæləri/  
artist /'ɑ:tɪst/  
black and white /,blæk ænd 'waɪt/  
brush /brʌʃ/  
colour /'kʌlə/  
exhibition /,ekspə'biʃən/  
landscape /'lændskeɪp/  
museum /'mju:ziəm/  
(oil) painting /('ɔ:ɪl) 'peɪntɪŋ/  
paint /peɪnt/  
painter /'peɪntə/  
photo/photograph /'fəʊtəʊ/'fəʊtəgrəf/  
photographer /'fəʊtəgrəfə/  
photography /'fəʊtəgrəfi/  
portrait /'pɔ:trət/  
sculptor /'skʌlptə/  
sculpture /'skʌlptʃə/  
street art /'stri:t ɑ:t/  
street artist /'stri:t ɑ:tɪst/  
studio /'stju:diəʊ/

### Types of books and films

action film /'ækʃən fɪlm/  
adaptation /,ædæp'teɪʃən/  
adventure film /əd'ventʃə fɪlm/  
autobiography /,ɔ:təbaɪ'ɒɡrəfi/  
biography /baɪ'ɒɡrəfi/  
classic /'klæsɪk/  
comedy /'kɒmədi/  
cookbook /'kʊkbʊk/  
crime story/film /kraɪm 'stɔ:ri/fɪlm/  
documentary /,dɒkjə'mentəri/  
drama /'drɑ:mə/  
encyclopedia /,ɪn,saiklə'pi:diə/  
fairy tale /'fiəri teɪl/  
fantasy novel/film /'fæntəsi ,nəvəl/fɪlm/  
ghost story /'ɡəʊst 'stɔ:ri/  
historical drama /hɪ'stɒrɪkəl 'drɑ:mə/  
horror /'hɒrə/  
musical /'mju:zɪkəl/  
novel /'nəvəl/  
play /pleɪ/  
poetry /'pəʊtri/  
romantic comedy /'rəʊ,mæntɪk 'kɒmədi/  
romantic fiction /'rəʊ,mæntɪk 'fɪkʃən/  
science fiction novel/film /saɪəns 'fɪkʃən ,nəvəl/fɪlm/  
short story /ʃɔ:t 'stɔ:ri/  
thriller /'θrɪlə/  
travel guide /'trævel gaɪd/  
war film /'wɔ: fɪlm/  
western /'westən/

### Film, theatre, books

act /ækt/  
acting /'æktɪŋ/  
animation /,æni'meɪʃən/  
author /'ɔ:θə/  
award-winning /ə'wɔ:d ,wɪnɪŋ/  
based on /'beɪst ɒn/  
best-seller /'best 'seɪlə/  
book/film review /'bʊk/'fɪlm ri,vju:/  
camera /'kæmərə/  
central character /,sentrəl 'kærəktə/  
chapter /'tʃæptə/  
costume /'kɒstjəm/  
dialogue /'daɪəlɒɡ/  
direct /dɪ'rekt/  
filming /'fɪlmɪŋ/  
give a good performance as ... /gɪv ə ,ɡʊd pə'fɔ:məns əz/  
hold your attention /həʊld jɔ: ə'tenʃən/  
lead actor /'li:d 'æktə/  
literary critic /,lɪtərəri 'krɪtɪk/  
movie /'mu:vi/  
novelist /'nəvələst/  
perform /pə'fɔ:m/

performance /pə'fɔ:məns/  
play the role of ... /pleɪ ðə 'rəʊl əv/  
playwright /'pleɪraɪt/  
plot /plɒt/  
poem /'pəʊm/  
poet /'pəʊt/  
producer /prə'dju:sə/  
scene /si:n/  
screenplay/script /'skri:npleɪ/'skrɪpt/  
scriptwriter /'skrɪpt ,raɪtə/  
setting /'setɪŋ/  
soundtrack /'saʊndtrek/  
special effects /,speʃəl ə'fektz/  
stage /steɪdʒ/  
storyline /'stɔ:rlaɪn/  
suspense /sə'spens/  
take place in /teɪk 'pleɪs ɪn/  
tension /'tenʃən/  
verse /vɜ:s/  
violence /'vaɪələns/  
writer /'raɪtə/  
X-rated /'eks ,reɪtəd/

### Music

album /'ælbəm/  
band /bænd/  
classical music /'klæsɪkəl 'mju:zɪk/  
composer /kəm'pəʊzə/  
hit /hɪt/  
instrument /'ɪnstɹəmənt/  
jazz /dʒæz/  
live /laɪv/  
music award /'mju:zɪk ə ,wɔ:rd/  
music festival /'mju:zɪk ,festəvəl/  
opera /'ɒpərə/  
piano /'pi:ənəʊ/  
singer /'sɪŋə/  
song /sɒŋ/  
songwriter /'sɒŋ ,raɪtə/  
symphony /'sɪmfəni/  
the charts /ðə 'tʃɑ:tɪz/  
track /trek/  
vocal range /,vəʊkəl 'reɪndʒ/

### TV and media

comedian /kə'mɪdiən/  
episode /'epɪsəʊd/  
journalist /'dʒɜ:nəlɪst/  
newspaper article /'nju:z ,peɪpə ,ɑ:tɪkəl/  
report /rɪ'pɔ:t/  
sitcom /'sɪtkɒm/  
TV presenter /,ti:'vi: pri,zentə/

### Description

amazing /ə'meɪzɪŋ/  
amusing /ə'mju:zɪŋ/  
boring /'bɔ:ɪŋ/  
brilliant /'brɪljənt/  
emotional /ɪ'məʊʃənəl/  
enjoyable /ɪn'dʒɔɪəbəl/  
entertaining /,entə'teɪnɪŋ/  
excellent /'eksələnt/  
factual /'fæktʃʊəl/  
funny /'fʌni/  
great /ɡreɪt/  
inspiring /ɪn'spaɪrɪŋ/  
moving /'mu:vɪŋ/  
perfect /'pɜ:kt/  
predictable /prɪ'dɪktəbəl/  
relaxing /rɪ'læksɪŋ/  
true-life /tru: 'laɪf/  
unoriginal /,ʌnə'ɒrɪdʒənəl/  
unrealistic /,ʌnrɪə'lɪstɪk/  
wonderful /'wʌndəfʊl/

## 04 WORD LIST • LIVING

### Types of houses

bungalow /'bʌŋɡələʊ/  
cottage /'kɒtɪdʒ/  
detached house /dɪ'tætʃt 'haʊs/  
eco-house /'i:koʊ haʊs/  
flat /flæt/  
houseboat /'haʊsbəʊt/  
semi-detached house /,semɪdɪ'tætʃt 'haʊs/  
studio apartment /,stju:diəʊ ə'pɑ:tmənt/  
terraced house /,terəs 'haʊs/

### Location

in a village /ɪn ə 'vɪlɪdʒ/  
in the city centre /ɪn ðə ,sɪti 'sentə/  
in the countryside /ɪn ðə 'kʌntrɪsaɪd/  
in the suburbs /ɪn ðə 'sʌbəbz/  
near the sea /nɪə ðə 'si:/  
on a housing estate /ɒn ə 'haʊzɪŋ ɪ'steɪt/  
on the edge of the city /ɒn ðə 'edʒ əv ðə 'sɪti/

### Building materials

brick /brɪk/  
concrete /'kɒŋkri:t/  
mud /mʌd/  
stone /stəʊn/  
wood /wʊd/

### Description

comfortable /'kʌmfətəbəl/  
cosy /'kɔ:zi/  
lots of natural light /lɒts əv ,nætʃərəl laɪt/  
modern /'mɒdə/  
open-plan /,əʊpən 'pleɪn/  
spacious /'speɪʃəs/  
traditional /trə'dɪʃənəl/

### Inside a house

basement /'beɪsmənt/  
bedside table /'bedsaɪd 'teɪbəl/  
bookcase /'bʊk-keɪs/  
bookshelf /'bʊkʃelf/  
carpet /'kɑ:pɪt/  
ceiling /'si:liŋ/  
central heating /,sentrəl 'hi:tiŋ/  
cooker /'kʊkə/  
couch /kaʊtʃ/  
cupboard /'kʌbəd/  
duvet /'du:vət/  
electricity /ɪ'lek'trɪsəti/  
floor /flɔ:/   
floorboard /'flɔ:bɔ:rd/  
fridge /'frɪdʒ/  
kitchen sink /,kɪtʃən 'sɪŋk/  
lamp /læmp/  
shelf /ʃelf/  
single bed /,sɪŋɡəl 'bed/  
sofa /'səʊfə/  
stairs /steəz/  
toilet /'tɔɪlət/  
wardrobe /'wɔ:drəʊb/  
window sill /'wɪndəʊ ,sɪl/  
wood-burner /'wʊd ,bɜ:nə/  
worktop /'wɜ:k tɒp/

### Outside a house

back door /'bæk 'dɔ:/   
balcony /'bælkəni/  
front door /,frʌnt 'dɔ:/   
garage /'ɡærɪdʒ/  
path /pəθ/  
patio /'peɪtɪəʊ/  
pond /pɒnd/  
porch /pɔ:tʃ/  
roof /ru:f/  
shed /ʃed/  
sky-light /'skɑ:laɪt/  
solar panel /,səʊlə 'pænl/  
stone wall /,stəʊn 'wɔ:l/

### Places in the city and in the country

beach /bi:tʃ/  
bridge /brɪdʒ/  
canal /kə'neɪl/  
canyon /'kænjən/  
castle /'kɑ:sl/  
coast /kəʊst/  
harbour /'hɑ:bə/  
hill /hɪl/  
island /'aɪlənd/  
monument /'mɒnjəmənt/  
mountain /'maʊntən/  
rainforest /'reɪnfɒrɪst/  
reef /ri:f/  
river /rɪvə/  
rock /rɒk/  
ruins /ru:nz/  
slums /slʌmz/  
square /skweə/  
statue /'stætʃʊ/  
temple /'tempəl/  
valley /'vælɪ/

### Tourism

a must /ə 'mʌst/  
accommodation /ə,kəmə'deɪʃən/  
attract tourists /ə'trækt 'tɔ:ərɪst/  
attraction /ə'trækʃən/  
breathtaking view /'breɪtkeɪkɪŋ 'vju:/   
entertainment /,entə'teɪnmənt/  
historic site /hɪ'stɒrɪk 'saɪt/  
host /həʊst/  
local speciality /,ləʊkəl ,speʃi'æləti/  
nightlife /'naɪtlaɪf/  
sights /saɪts/  
tourist destination /'tɔ:ərɪst destə,neɪʃən/

### Phrases with make and do

do the cooking /du: ðə 'kʊkɪŋ/  
do the gardening /du: ðə 'ɡɑ:dnɪŋ/  
do the housework /du: ðə 'haʊswɜ:k/  
do the ironing /du: ðə 'aɪənɪŋ/  
do the shopping /du: ðə 'ʃɒpɪŋ/  
do the washing /du: ðə 'wɒʃɪŋ/  
do the washing-up /du: ðə ,wɒʃɪŋ 'ʌp/  
do your best /du: jɜ: 'best/  
do your homework /du: jɜ: 'haʊmweɪk/  
make a complaint /meɪk ə kəm'pleɪnt/  
make a decision /meɪk ə dɪ'sɪʒən/  
make a mess /meɪk ə 'mes/  
make a noise /meɪk ə 'nɔɪz/  
make dinner /meɪk 'dɪnə/  
make your bed /meɪk jɜ: 'bed/

### Other

architecture /'ɑ:kɪtektʃə/  
awesome /ə'wɔ:səm/  
busy /'bɪzi/  
dominate /'dɒmənɪt/  
house-warming party /'haʊswɜ:mɪŋ ,pɑ:ti/  
impressive /ɪm'presɪv/  
move (house) /mu:v ('haʊs)/   
narrow /'nærəʊ/  
natural wonder /,nætʃərəl 'wʌndə/  
neighbour /'neɪbə/  
neighbourhood /'neɪbəhʊd/  
population /,pɒpjə'leɪʃən/  
public transport system /,pʌblɪk 'træns'pɔ:t ,sɪstəm/  
selection /sə'lekʃən/  
shallow /'ʃæləʊ/  
spectacular /spek'tækjələ/  
teddy bear /'tedi beə/  
trading centre /'treɪdɪŋ ,sentə/

## 05 WORD LIST • SCHOOL

### Subjects and courses

Architecture /'a:ktæktʃə/  
Art /ɑ:t/  
Art History /'a:t ,hɪstəri/  
Design and Technology /di,zam ən tek'nɒlədʒi/  
Engineering /'endʒənɪərɪŋ/  
English /'ɪŋɡlɪʃ/  
Geography /dʒi'ɒɡrəfi/  
Law /lɔ:/  
Maths /mæθs/  
Medicine /'medɪsən/  
Music /'mju:zɪk/  
Physical Education (PE) /fɪzɪkəl ,edʒu'keɪʃən (pi:'ti)/  
Reading /'ri:dnŋ/  
Science /'saɪəns/  
Writing /'raɪtɪŋ/

### School

A levels /'eɪ ,levəlz/  
ability /ə'bɪləti/  
attend a school /ə'tend ə 'sku:l/  
bully /'bʊli/  
canteen /kæn'ti:n/  
classmate /'klɑ:smeɪt/  
classroom /'klɑ:srʊm/  
compulsory /kəm'pʌlsəri/  
demanding /dɪ'maɪndɪŋ/  
discipline /'dɪsəplɪn/  
do a subject /du: ə 'sʌbdʒɪkt/  
do/take an exam /du:,teɪk ən ɪg'zæm/  
drop a subject /drɒp ə ,sʌbdʒɪkt/  
educate /'edʒukeɪt/  
education /,edʒu'keɪʃən/  
elementary school /,elə'mentəri sku:l/  
fail an exam /feɪl ən ɪg'zæm/  
field trip /'fi:ld trɪp/  
grade/mark /greɪd/mɑ:k/  
learn by heart/memorise /,lɜ:n baɪ 'hɑ:t/'meməraɪz/  
leave school /li:v 'sku:l/  
literate /'lɪtərət/  
miss/skip lessons /mɪs/,skɪp 'lesənz/  
pass an exam /pɑ:s ən ɪg'zæm/  
playground /'pleɪgraʊnd/  
primary school /'praɪməri sku:l/  
revise /rɪ'vaɪz/  
revision /rɪ'vɪʒən/  
schedule /'fedʒu:l/  
school gate /,sku:l 'geɪt/  
school uniform /,sku:l 'ju:məfɔ:m/  
schoolwork /'sku:lwɜ:k/  
secondary school /'sekəndəri sku:l/  
single-sex school /sɪŋɡəl seks 'sku:l/  
subject /'sʌbdʒɪkt/  
take a break /teɪk ə 'breɪk/  
timetable /'taɪm,teɪbəl/

### University

academic /,ækə'demɪk/  
academy /ə'kædəmi/  
apply for (a place) /ə'plai fɔ:(ə 'pleɪs)/  
diploma /dɪ'plɒmə/  
do a course /du: ə 'kɔ:rs/  
entrance exam /'entrəns ɪg'zæm/  
gap year /'ɡæp jɜ:/  
tuition fee /tju:'ʃi:ən fi:/

### Phrases with get

get a good job /get ə ,ɡʊd 'dʒɒb/  
get a lot out of sth /get ə 'lɒt aʊt əv ,sʌmθɪŋ/  
get a place at university /get ə ,pleɪs ət ,ju:nə'vɜ:səti/  
get a reply /get ə rɪ'plai/  
get a tattoo /get ə 'tætu:  
get better /get 'betə/  
get cold /get 'kəʊld/  
get dark /get 'dɔ:k/  
get exhausted /get ɪg'zɔ:stəd/

get good marks /get ,ɡʊd 'mɑ:ks/  
get home /get 'həʊm/  
get ill /get 'ɪl/  
get into trouble /get ,ɪntə 'trʌbl/  
get into university /get ,ɪntə ,ju:nə'vɜ:səti/  
get late /get 'leɪt/  
get nervous /get 'nɜ:vəs/  
get on with /get 'ɒn wɪð/  
get out of /get 'aʊt əv/  
get ready /get 'redi/  
get rid of sth /get 'rɪd əv ,sʌmθɪŋ/  
get stressed about sth /get 'strest ə,baut ,sʌmθɪŋ/  
get there /get ðeə/  
get tired /get 'taɪəd/  
get to school /get tə 'sku:l/  
get to the station /get tə ðə 'steɪʃən/  
get to work /get tə 'wɜ:k/  
get up /get 'ʌp/

### Other

background /'bækgraʊnd/  
be friendly with /bi 'frendli wɪð/  
beanbag /'bi:nbæg/  
blinds /blaɪndz/  
carry on /,kæri 'ɒn/  
chill out /tʃɪl 'aʊt/  
collect /kə'lekt/  
collection /kə'leɪʃən/  
community /kə'mju:nəti/  
compete against /kəm'pi:t ə ,ɡenst/  
conditions /kən'dɪʃənz/  
decide /dɪ'saɪd/  
decision /dɪ'sɪʒən/  
donate /dəʊ'neɪt/  
donation /dəʊ'neɪʃən/  
exhaust /ɪg'zɔ:st/  
exhaustion /ɪg'zɔ:stɪʃən/  
explain /ɪk'spleɪn/  
explanation /,eksplə'neɪʃən/  
flexible /'fleksəbəl/  
follow your interests /fɒləʊ jɜ:(ə 'ɪntərəs/  
fundraising /'faʊnd,raɪzɪŋ/  
have a good time /hæv ə ,ɡʊd 'taɪm/  
invest /ɪn'vest/  
isolate /aɪ'səleɪt/  
isolation /aɪ'səleɪʃən/  
keep a promise /ki:p ə 'prɒmɪs/  
meet up with /mi:t ʌp wɪð/  
on your own /ɒn jɜ:(ə 'ɒn/  
provide /prə'vaɪd/  
provision /prə'vɪʒən/  
put on /put 'ɒn/  
reach /ri:tʃ/  
relax /rɪ'læks/  
relevant /rɪ'levənt/  
remote /rɪ'məʊt/  
rigid /rɪ'dʒɪd/  
scrape /skreɪp/  
stumble into /'stʌmbəl ,ɪntə/  
submit /sə'mɪt/  
swipe card /'swaɪp kɑ:rd/  
take it easy /teɪk ɪt 'i:zi/  
take off /teɪk 'ɒf/  
uncluttered /ʌn'klʌtəd/  
waste of time /weɪst əv 'taɪm/

## 06 WORD LIST • WORKING LIFE

### Jobs

accountant /ə'kaʊntənt/  
actor /'æktə/  
airline pilot /'eɪlən ,paɪlət/  
babysitter/childminder /'beɪbɪ,sɪtə'tʃaɪld,mɑɪndə/  
banker /'bæŋkə/  
beautician /'bju:tɪʃən/  
builder /'bɪldə/  
bus driver /'bʌs ,draɪvə/  
businessman /'bɪznəs'mæn/  
camp supervisor /'kæmp ,sʊpəvaɪzə/  
carer /'keərə/  
carpenter /'kɑ:pəntə/  
computer programmer /kəm'pjʊ:tə ,prə'ɒɡrəmə/  
design consultant /dɪ'zain kən'sʌltənt/  
DJ /di: dʒeɪ/  
doctor /'dɒktə/  
driving instructor /'draɪvɪŋ ,ɪn'strʌktə/  
electrician /,ɪlek'trɪʃən/  
engineer /'endʒənɪə/  
estate agent /'eɪstət ,eɪdʒənt/  
flight attendant /'flaɪt ə'tendənt/  
hairdresser /'heə'dresə/  
interpreter /'ɪntə'prɪtə/  
journalist /'dʒʌnəlɪst/  
lifeguard /'laɪfgɑ:d/  
mechanic /mɪ'kænik/  
model /'mɒdl/  
musician /mju:'zi:ʃən/  
nurse /nɜ:rs/  
office assistant /'ɒfəs ə'sɪstənt/  
photographer /fə'tɒɡrəfə/  
plumber /'plʌmə/  
police officer /pə'li:s ,ɒfəsə/  
politician /pə'lɪtɪʃən/  
receptionist /rɪ'sepʃənɪst/  
scientist /'saɪəntɪst/  
secondary school teacher /'sekəndəri sku:l ,ti:tʃə/  
secretary /'sekretəri/  
shop assistant /ʃɒp ə'sɪstənt/  
skiing instructor /'skiɪŋ ɪn'strʌktə/  
specialist /'speʃəlɪst/  
taxi driver /'tæksɪ ,draɪvə/  
tourist guide /'tuərist gaɪd/  
travel agent /'trævel ,eɪdʒənt/

### Employment

apply for a job /ə'plai fɔ:(ə 'dʒɒb/  
banking /'bæŋkɪŋ/  
boss /bɒs/  
candidate /'kændɪdət/  
career /kə'riə/  
communication skills /kə'mju:nə'keɪʃən skɪlz/  
conference call /'kɒnfərəns kɔ:l/  
contact details /'kɒntækt ,di:teɪlz/  
CV /si:'vi:/  
employee /ɪm'plɔɪ-i:/  
employer /ɪm'plɔɪə/  
finish work /fɪnɪʃ 'wɜ:k/  
have a job /hæv ə 'dʒɒb/  
holiday job /hə'lɪdi 'dʒɒb/  
interview /'ɪntəvju:/  
job advert/advertisement /'dʒɒb ,əd'vɜ:tɪs'mənt/  
look for a job /lʊk fɔ:(ə 'dʒɒb/  
male-dominated job /meɪl ,dɒmɪnə'tɪd 'dʒɒb/  
manual job /mænjuəl 'dʒɒb/  
marketing /'mɑ:ktɪŋ/  
office /'ɒfəs/  
oil industry /'ɔɪl ,ɪndəstri/  
part-time job /pɑ:t taɪm 'dʒɒb/  
personal skills /pɜ:snəl 'skɪlz/  
position /pə'zɪʃən/  
profession /prə'feʃən/  
promotion /prə'məʊʃən/  
retail /reɪtəl/  
retire /rɪ'taɪə/  
self-confidence /self 'kɒn fɪdəns/  
start work /stɑ:t 'wɜ:k/  
training /'treɪnɪŋ/

university degree /ju:nə'vɜ:səti dɪ'ɡri:/  
work experience /wɜ:k ɪk'sperɪəns/  
work full-time /wɜ:k fʊl 'taɪm/

### Collocations - terms and conditions

be badly paid /bi ,bædli 'peɪd/  
be/work in (IT) /bi ,wɜ:k ɪn (aɪ'ti:/  
be on your feet all day /bi ɒn jɜ:(ə 'fɪt əl deɪ/  
be self-employed /bi ,self ɪm'plɔɪd/  
be well-paid /bi ,wel 'peɪd/  
do physical work /du: fɪzɪkəl ,wɜ:k/  
do/work flexible hours /du:,wɜ:k ,fleksəbəl 'aʊəz/  
do/work long hours /du:,wɜ:k lɒŋ 'aʊəz/  
do/work overtime /du:,wɜ:k ,əʊvətaɪm/  
do/work regular office hours /du:,wɜ:k ,regjələr 'ɒfəs ,aʊəz/  
do/work shifts /du:,wɜ:k ʃɪfts/  
get a bonus /get ə 'bəʊnəs/  
get/earn a high/an average salary /get/,ɜ:n ə ,haɪ/ən ,ævərɪdʒ 'sæləri/  
get/earn low wages /get/,ɜ:n laʊ 'weɪdʒɪz/  
get/have a pay rise /get/,hæv ə 'peɪ raɪz/  
get/have/take a day off /get/,hæv/teɪk ə deɪ 'ɒf/  
get/have/take five weeks' paid holiday /get/,hæv/teɪk faɪv 'wi:kz ,peɪd 'hɒlədi/  
get/have/take time off /get/,hæv/teɪk taɪm 'ɒf/  
work for/at (Citibank) /wɜ:k fɔ:(ə't /sɪ'tɪbæŋk/  
work for (a construction company) /wɜ:k fɔ:(ə kən'strʌkʃən ,kʌmpəni/  
work from home /wɜ:k frəm 'həʊm/  
work in (a hospital/advertising) /wɜ:k ɪn (ə 'hɒspɪtəl/ ,əd'vɜ:təɪzɪŋ/  
work in/as part of a team /wɜ:k ɪn/əz ,pɑ:t əv ə 'ti:m/  
work outside /wɜ:k aʊt'saɪd/  
work with your hands /wɜ:k wɪð jɜ:(ə 'hændz/

### Other

be a fast learner /bi ə ,fɑ:st 'lɜ:nə/  
be dependent on /bi dɪ'pendənt ɒn/  
benefit /'benɪfɪt/  
deal with sth /di:əl wɪð ,sʌmθɪŋ/  
driving licence /'draɪvɪŋ ,laɪsəns/  
enclose /ɪn'kləʊz/  
find out /faɪnd 'aʊt/  
foreign /fə'reɪn/  
give up /ɡɪv ʌp/  
grow /grəʊ/  
have a shave /hæv ə 'feɪv/  
native /'neɪv/  
set up /set 'ʌp/  
shelter /'ʃeltə/  
sum up /sʌm ʌp/  
throw out /θrəʊ 'aʊt/  
waste /weɪst/  
work sth out /wɜ:k ,sʌmθɪŋ aʊt/

## 07 WORD LIST • SHOPPING

### Types of shops

baker's /'beɪkəz/  
bookstore /'bʊkstɔː/  
butcher's /'bʊtʃəz/  
charity shop /'tʃærəti ʃɒp/  
clothes shop /'kləʊðz ʃɒp/  
designer shop /diːzəna ʃɒp/  
greengrocer's /'ɡriŋɡrəʊsəz/  
jeweller's /'dʒuːləz/  
newsagent's /'njuːz,edʒənt/  
pet shop /'pet ʃɒp/  
shoe shop /'ʃuː ʃɒp/  
shopping centre/mall /'ʃɒpiŋ,senta'mæl/  
store /stɔː/  
supermarket /'suːpə,maɪkət/  
toy shop /tɔɪ ʃɒp/

### Places in town, services

aquarium /ə'kwɪəriəm/  
cinema /'sɪnəmə/  
manicure /'mænɪkjʊə/  
museum /'mjuːziəm/  
post office /'pəʊst,ɒfɪs/  
theatre /'θiːə/  
theme park /'tiːm paːk/  
the dentist /ðə'dentɪst/  
the doctor /ðə'dɒktə/  
wedding chapel /'wedɪŋ,tʃepəl/

### Goods

beauty products /'bjuti,prɒdakt/  
boots /buːts/  
carpet /'kɑːpət/  
electrical goods /ɪ'lektrɪkəl gʊdz/  
face cream /'feɪs kriːm/  
friendship bracelet /'frendʃɪp,breɪslət/  
game console /'ɡeɪm kən,səʊl/  
headphones /'hedfəʊnz/  
leisurewear /'leɪʒəweə/  
light bulb /laɪt bʌlb/  
plant /plɑːnt/  
purse /pɜːs/  
sandals /'sændəlz/  
swimwear /'swɪmweə/  
toiletries /'tɔɪlətriːz/  
trainers /'treɪnəz/  
vacuum cleaner /'vækjuəm,kliːnə/

### Shopping

advertising /'ædvətaɪzɪŋ/  
branding /'brændɪŋ/  
broken /'brəʊkən/  
buy on impulse /baɪ ɒn 'ɪmpʌls/  
changing room /'tʃeɪndʒɪŋ ruːm/  
complain /kəm'pleɪn/  
complaint /kəm'pleɪnt/  
consumer /kən'sʊmjə/  
damaged /'dæmɪdʒd/  
delivery /dɪ'lɪvəri/  
economical /,ekə'nɒmɪkəl/  
fashionable /'fæʃənəbəl/  
faulty /'fɔːlti/  
fit /fɪt/  
out of stock /aʊt əv 'stɒk/  
package /'pækɪdʒ/  
packaging /'pækɪdʒɪŋ/  
product /'prɒdakt/  
quality /'kwɒləti/  
reduced /rɪ'dʒuːst/  
replacement /rɪ'pleɪsmənt/  
sell-by date /'sel baɪ deɪt/  
sell out /'sel 'aʊt/  
service /'sɜːvɪs/  
size /saɪz/  
suit /suːt/  
try on /,traɪ 'ɒn/  
value /'væljuː/

### Shopping and services – collocations and useful phrases

attract attention /ə'trækt ə'tenʃən/  
close an account /,kləʊz ɒn ə'kaʊnt/  
do some research /,duː sʌm rɪ'sɜːtʃ/  
do the shopping /,duː ðə 'ʃɒpiŋ/  
exchange sth for sth /ɪks'tʃeɪndʒ ,sʌmθɪŋ fɔː ,sʌmθɪŋ/  
get a refund /,get ə 'rɪfʌnd/  
go shopping /,ɡəʊ 'ʃɒpiŋ/  
go window shopping /,ɡəʊ ,wɪndəʊ 'ʃɒpiŋ/  
have a sale /,hæv ə 'seɪl/  
I can't afford it /aɪ kæn't ə'fɔːd ɪt/  
keep the receipt /,kiːp ðə rɪ'siːt/  
on (special) offer /ɒn (speʃəl) 'ɒfə/  
pay attention to /peɪ ə'tenʃən tə/  
pick up a bargain /,pɪk ʌp ə 'bɑːɡeɪn/  
shop online /,ʃɒp ɒn'laɪn/  
some parts are missing /sʌm ,paːts ə 'mɪsɪŋ/  
trust sb with sth /'trʌst ,sʌmbədɪ wɪð ,sʌmθɪŋ/

### Partitives

a bottle of perfume /ə ,bɒtl əv 'pɜːfjuːm/  
a bottle of shampoo/mineral water /ə ,bɒtl əv 'ʃem'puː / ,mɪnərəl 'wɔːtə/  
a bunch of flowers /ə ,bʌntʃ əv 'flaʊəz/  
a bunch of grapes/bananas /ə ,bʌntʃ əv 'ɡreɪps/bə'nænəz/  
a can of beans/cola/tomatoes /ə ,kæn əv 'biːnz/'kəʊkə / ,tə'meɪtəʊz/  
a jar of jam/instant coffee/mayonnaise /ə ,dʒɑː əv 'dʒæm / ,ɪnstənt 'kɒfi,məɪə'neɪz/  
a packet of biscuits/tea/crisps /ə ,pækət əv 'bɪskɪts/'tiː/'krisps/  
a pair of jeans/skirts/scissors /ə ,peər əv 'dʒiːnz/'skɪːz/'saɪzəz/

### Personality and emotions

anger /'æŋɡə/  
angry /'æŋɡri/  
creative /kri'eɪtɪv/  
elegance /'elɪɡəns/  
elegant /'elɪɡənt/  
excitement /ɪk'saɪtmənt/  
greed /ɡriːd/  
greedy /'ɡriːdi/  
honest /'ɒnəst/  
honesty /'ɒnəstɪ/  
jealous /'dʒeləs/  
jealousy /'dʒələsɪ/  
loyal /lɔɪəl/  
loyalty /'lɔɪəlti/  
mysterious /mɪ'stəriəs/  
mystery /'mɪstəri/  
passion /'pæʃən/  
passionate /'pæʃənət/

### Other

competitive /kəm'petətɪv/  
focus on /'fəʊkəs ɒn/  
make a living /,meɪk ə 'lɪvɪŋ/  
market /'mɑːkət/  
old-fashioned /,əld 'fæʃənd/  
protect the environment /prə'tekt ðɪ ɪn'vaɪrənmənt/  
reduce poverty /rɪ'djuːs 'pɒvəti/  
secure /sɪ'kjʊə/  
security /sɪ'kjʊərəti/  
trade /treɪd/  
wealthy /welθi/  
wealth /welθ/

## 08 WORD LIST • SOCIETY

### Society and politics

African American /,æfrɪkən ə'merɪkən/  
black community /,blæk kə'mjuːnəti/  
Board of Education /,bɔːd əv ,edʒu'keɪʃən/  
capital city /,keɪpəl 'sɪti/  
citizen /'sɪtəzən/  
Civil Rights Movement /,sɪvəl 'raɪts ,muːvmənt/  
constitutional monarchy /,kɒnstə'tjuːʃənəl 'mɒnəki/  
corruption /kə'rʌpʃən/  
declare /dɪ'kleə/  
democracy /dɪ'mɒkrəsi/  
discriminate /dɪ'skrɪmeɪnət/  
discrimination /dɪ'skrɪmə'nɪʃən/  
equal /'iːkwəl/  
fight for /faɪt fɔː/  
freedom /'friːdəm/  
general elections /,dʒenərəl ɪ'lekʃənz/  
head of government /,hed əv 'ɡʌvənmənt/  
head of state /,hed əv 'steɪt/  
human race /,hjuːmən reɪs/  
humiliate /hjuː'mɪliət/  
humiliation /hjuː'mɪli'eɪʃən/  
make a speech /,meɪk ə 'spiːtʃ/  
Nobel Peace Prize /,nɒl,bel'piːs praɪz/  
political system /pə'lɪtɪkəl'sɪstəm/  
Prime Minister /'praɪm'mɪnɪstə/  
racial discrimination /,reɪʃəl dɪ'skrɪmə'nɪʃən/  
racial segregation /,reɪʃəl ,seɡrɪ'geɪʃən/  
racism /'reɪsɪzəm/  
run a campaign /,rʌn ə kəm'peɪn/  
segregate /'seɡrɪɡeɪt/  
segregation /,seɡrɪ'geɪʃən/  
separate /'seɪpəreɪt/  
separation /,seɪpə'reɪʃən/  
sexism /'seksɪzəm/  
slave /sleɪv/  
slave trade /'sleɪv treɪd/  
slavery /'sleɪvri/  
statistics /stə'tɪstɪks/  
the Supreme Court /ðə suːprɪm 'kɔːt/  
tax /tæks/  
terrorism /'terərɪzəm/  
unemployment /,ʌnɪm'plɪmənt/  
vote /vəʊt/

### Crime

arson /'ɜːsn/  
assassinate /ə'sæsəneɪt/  
assassination /ə'sæsə'neɪʃən/  
break into /breɪk ɪntə/  
break the law /breɪk ðə 'lɔː/  
burglary /'bɜːgləri/  
burbgle /'bɜːglə/  
car crime /'kɑː kraɪm/  
commit a crime /kə'mɪt ə 'kraɪm/  
crime scene /'kraɪm siːn/  
cyberbullying /saɪbə,bʊlɪŋ/  
damage public property /,dæmɪdʒ ,pʌblɪk 'prɒpəti/  
deal drugs /diːl 'drʌɡz/  
drug dealing /'drʌɡ ,diːlɪŋ/  
gang /ɡæŋ/  
graffiti /græ'fɪti/  
hacking /'hekɪŋ/  
illegal /ɪ'lɪɡəl/  
mug /mʌɡ/  
mugging /'mʌɡɪŋ/  
murder /'mɜːdə/  
murder rates /'mɜːdə reɪts/  
mystery /'mɪstəri/  
online piracy /ɒnlaɪn 'paɪrəsi/  
pirate /'paɪrət/  
rob /rɒb/  
robbery /'rɒbəri/  
set fire to /,set 'faɪə tə/  
shoplift /'ʃɒp,lɪft/

shoplifting /'ʃɒp,lɪftɪŋ/  
steal /stiːl/  
theft /θeft/  
vandalise /'vændəlaɪz/  
vandalism /'vændəlɪzəm/  
victim /'vɪktɪm/

### Criminals

arsonist /'ɜːsnəst/  
burglar /'bɜːglə/  
drug dealer /'drʌɡ ,diːlə/  
mugger /'mʌɡə/  
murderer /'mɜːdəra/  
pickpocket /'pɪk,pɒkɪt/  
pirate /'paɪrət/  
robber /'rɒbə/  
shoplifter /'ʃɒp,lɪftə/  
thief /θiːf/  
vandal /'vændl/

### Justice

appear in court /ə ,piːə ɪn 'kɔːt/  
arrest /ə'rest/  
case /keɪs/  
catch /kætʃ/  
collect evidence /kə'lekt ɪ'vedəns/  
community service /kə'mjuːnəti ,sɜːvɪs/  
court /kɔːt/  
guilty /'ɡɪlti/  
identity /aɪ'dentəti/  
innocent /ɪ'nɒsənt/  
interview victims/witnesses /,ɪntəvjuː 'vɪktɪmz/'wɪtnəsɪz/  
judge /dʒʌdʒ/  
police officer /pə'liːs ,ɒfɪsə/  
prison /'prɪzən/  
punish /'pʌnɪʃ/  
report a crime /rɪ'pɔːt ə 'kraɪm/  
search /sɜːtʃ/  
sentence /'sentəns/  
suspect /'sʌspekt/  
witness /'wɪtnəs/

### Body language

bite your nails /baɪt jɔː 'neɪlz/  
blink your eyes /brɪŋk jɔː 'aɪz/  
cross your arms /krɒs jɔː 'ɑːmz/  
fiddle with your hair /fɪdl wɪð jɔː 'heə/  
lie /laɪ/  
lie /laɪ/  
raise your eyebrows /raɪz jɔː 'aɪbrəʊz/  
stare at /'steər æt/  
tell a lie /tel ə 'laɪ/  
tell the truth /tel ðə 'truːθ/

### Other

boring /'bɔːrɪŋ/  
convincing /kən'vɪnsɪŋ/  
effective /ɪ'fektɪv/  
fake /feɪk/  
false /fɔːls/  
fascinating /'fæsəmeɪnɪŋ/  
genuine /'dʒenjuːn/  
life savings /laɪf 'seɪvɪŋz/  
shocking /'ʃɒkɪŋ/  
true /truː/



Pearson Education Limited,  
Edinburgh Gate, Harlow  
Essex, CM20 2JE, England  
and Associated Companies throughout the world

www.english.com/focus

© Pearson Education Limited 2016

The right of Sue Kay, Vaughan Jones, Daniel Brayshaw, Bartosz Michalowski and Lynda Edwards to be identified as authors of this work has been asserted by them in accordance with the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act, 1988.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise without the prior written permission of the copyright holders.

First published 2016  
ISBN: 9781447997867

Set in Avenir  
Printed and bound by Golden Cup in China

Sue Kay and Vaughan Jones's acknowledgements

We would like to thank all the students and teachers we have met and observed during the development of Focus. We are also especially grateful to our wonderful editorial team for their expertise, encouragement and dedication. Finally a big thank you to our families without whose support and understanding none of this would have been possible.

#### Acknowledgements

The publishers and authors would like to thank the following people for their feedback and comments during the development of the material:  
Humberto Santos Duran, Anna Maria Grochowska, Inga Lande, Magdalena Loska, Rosa Maria Maldonado, Juliana Queiroz Pereira, Tomasz Siuta, Renata Tomaka-Pasternak

We are grateful to the following for permission to reproduce copyright material:

#### Text

Extract on page 26 from David Copperfield Penguin Readers series, Level 3. ISBN 978-1405862600, Pearson Education Ltd. (Dickens C); Extract and book cover on page 26 from "Dracula", Level 3 (Penguin Readers (Graded Readers)) ISBN 9781405855440, Pearson Education Ltd. (Iram Stoker); Quote on page 77 from The Moneyless Man, OneWorld Publications (Boyle M); Quote and Book Cover from The Moneyless Man, OneWorld Publications (Boyle M); General Displayed Text on page 86 after <http://www.fairtrade.org.uk>. Granted subject to approval of final proof. Article on pages 88-89 adapted from Tutorials: How the colour of a brand affects our perception, [www.macuser.co.uk](http://www.macuser.co.uk) (Caplin S)

#### Logos

Logo on page 24 from <http://www.youtube.com/>; Logo on page 25 adapted from <http://www.classmates.com/>; Logo on page 50 from <http://www.couchsurfing.org/>; Logo on page 86 from <http://www.fairtrade.org.uk>

In some instances we have been unable to trace the owners of copyright material, and we would appreciate any information that would enable us to do so.

#### Photo acknowledgements

The publisher would like to thank the following for their kind permission to reproduce their photographs:  
(Key: b-bottom; c-centre; l-left; r-right; t-top)

**123RF.com:** Tamas Pancel - Eross 75 (handshake), Wong Yu Liang 75 (clock); **Alamy Images:** Ammentorp Photography 10b, Antena Picture Library 23d (bottom), Rafael Ben-Ari 103b, Big Cheese Photo LLC 81, Clark Brennan 100c; Jack Carey 103b; colinspics 67c; Tony Cordoba 87 (E), Design Pics Inc 93, Ensayo Emin 77b, Martin Harvey 59c, Jim Holden 88-89, Ian Dagnall Commercial Collection 84, Interfoto 25t, Janine Wiedel Photolibrary 75d, Niall McOneag 10d, MIKA - Images 80, Motoring Picture Library 30c, Murad RM 75 (money); Ivan Nesterov 46, Andrew Paterson 97 (B), PCN Photography 75 (weightlifter); David Pearson 23t, Niels Poulsen 23b, PSL Images 68-69, PYMCA 97 (E), Simon Rawles 86c, Realimage 57, Stuart Rimmer 23d (top), Robert Harding World Imagery 23c, Gavin Rodgers 23b, Tetra Images 62b, Washington Imaging 97 (S), Jan Wlodarczyk 53b; **Mark Boyle:** James Burke 77r; **The BRIT School:** 38; **Copernicus Science Centre / Centrum Nauki Kopernik:** 32; **Corbis:** Alroy / Aurora Open / Kennan Harvey 31, Bettmann 28, 29, 29b, Bohemian Nomad Picturesmakers 60b, C.J. Burton 9c, CNP / Ron Sachs 29b, Epa / Kenno Brandt 60b, Juice Images / Ian Lishman 71b, Ronne Kaufman 51b, Jutta Klee 48, James Lawrie 63b, Owan B, Photokato / Odion Dinnar 48c, Olivier Roast 23d, Rubberball / Jessica Petersen 97 (A), Flip Schulte 100b, Science Photo Library / Victor Hakick Visions 99c, OK Images: Nabil Dweign Ltd 87 (b), Paul Wilkinson Collection 25t, Fotolia.com: air 45, Helder Almeida 73b, andrini 77 (background), antoni 36-37 (background), Yuri Arcus 20, auremar 75c, bds 13b, Mario Beauregard 30c, CandyBox Images 66b, Innovated Captures 83b, Richard Carey 27 (E), dockchristine 75, Close Encounters 7, Christian Delbert 30b, Oleksandr Dibova 76, DocSan 27b, ElenaHawes 30f, eurobanks 40/5, Dmitriy Gerska 87 (B), Warren Goldswain 15c, Scott Griesel 92, Jörg Hackemann 19b, 102, Heartland 58b, HuHu Lin 103b, Brian Jackson 86c, Jenner 72, Hayati Kayhan 27 (F), Kurhan 73b, Yulia Loukal 86b, magcom 50d, 62b, 79c, 9b, Maxim Malevich 87 (F), Monkey Business 44b, mrmarkin 10f, nyal 78b, 78c, Tyler Olson 72b, Ioannis Pantzi 50b, Paulista 77b (book), Pressmaster 41b, René 65b, Rido 15b, Salphoto 74, Gina Sanders 97 (F), Gino Santa Maria 27 (A), Gordana Semek 87 (A), Snilusev 27 (C), squidmediast 51b (g), Getty Images: AFP 101b, AFP / Agne-Christine Pousoulat 43c, AFP / Karen Bleier 85b, Airbus 9b, airport 43c, The Asahi Shimbun 9b, Steve Debenport 75b, Design Pics / Ben Welsh 56, Jonathan Eldersfield 43c, Rebecca Emery 4d, Don Farral 98b, Matt Henry Gunther 59b, Hulton Archive 101b, Hulton Archive / Consolidated News Pictures 29c, The Image Bank 9c, Ryan Lane 30b, Jason Merritt 38b, Michael Ochs Archives 100c, Keen Moskowitz 54, Redferns 43b, Carolyn Schaefer 80b, Science & Society Picture Library 29b, Joseph Carl Stielor 34b, SW Productions 105, UK Press via Getty Images 35b, AFP / Vanderlei Almeida 39c; **Imagestate:** Michael Dvarineks 55b; © JRM 39c, 39b; **Courtesy of the London Dungeon:** 55c; **Mail of America:** Courtesy Mail of America 84c; **Pearson Education Ltd:** 26c, 26c; 52, 67b, 79b, Sarah Butler 40c; 50b, Trevor Clifford 11 (A), 11 (B), 11 (C), 11 (D), Lord and Leverett 99c, Studio 8 10/2, 40/3, 50c; **Press Association Images:** AP 36b, AP / Mony Gosh 100b, PA Archive / Ian West 5; **Reuters:** Ho New / Handout 65b, Oleg Popov 64; **Rea Features:** Steve Bell 14b, Daily Mail / Michael Fresco 15c, Paul Grover 32b, Image Source 62b, Isopix 79c, Tony Kyriacou 47b, Nara Archives 36b, OJO Images 44b, Steve USA 14b, View Pictures 66c, 67b, View Pictures / Dennis Gilbert 66c, View Pictures / Hulton + Crow 66c; **Science Photo Library Ltd:** Christian Darkin 91c; **Shutterstock.com:** Antonio Aborigiani 100b, Andrew 63b, Andrey Popov 83b, Sergey Andrianov 87 (C), artkdesign 51b, ArtmarWitte 67c, auremar 73b, Barbara Barbore 54b, Nanny Bauer 87 (D), cicki 98b, cydo 27 (D), Dropu 53b, East 40/4, Endless Traveler 53b, Angelo Ferraro 55c, Fritzphoto 13b, Goodluz 71b, Paul McGhee / Hughes 75 (computer), Ikeyson 55c, Jlika 24b, Anastasia Kucherenko 107c, JinYoung Lee 61, Lightspring 24-25 (background), Maridav 35, MlaLu 24t, Neamov 87 (C), Odua Images 78b, Pres Panayotov 55b, rekephotos 27 (B), ronstik 75 (graduation), sienc 13b, sui vale souza 67c, Stock ite 73c, Togataki 51r (background), Tayhan 64-65 (background), zetve 107b; **Simon Dale:** 48, 49b, 49c, 49b; **SuperStock:** Image Source 16-17, 19c, Juice Images 48c, Library of Congress / Science Faction 100c, Photononstop 97 (C), Stock Connection 4b, Underwood Photo Archives 101c; **The Kobal Collection:** 20th Century Fox / Morton, Merrick 42, Everest Entertainment 40c, Hammer Film Productions 41b, Mark Johnson Productions 41b, Saw-Saw Films 41c, Silver Pictures 40b, Touchstone Pictures 40b, Universal / Working Title 4; **Toms Shoes:** 90, 90c; **Webb Chappell Photography:** Media Lab 26d

#### Illustrations

(Key: b-bottom; c-centre; l-left; r-right; t-top)  
Nicolas Gremaud (GREMS) p. 8, 18, 35, 58, 91, 95, 99, Virus Group pp. 4-7, 8b, 9-11  
All other images © Pearson Education

Every effort has been made to trace the copyright holders and we apologise in advance for any unintentional omissions. We would be pleased to insert the appropriate acknowledgement in any subsequent edition of this publication.

DIGITAL COPY

Acks to follow

# GRAMMAR FOCUS

## 0.1 Present tenses – review

### Present Simple

We use the Present Simple to talk about:

- states and permanent situations:  
We **live** in the centre of Sydney.
- actions which are repeated regularly:  
I **make** my bed every morning.

Affirmative	Negative
I/You/We/They <b>play.</b>	I/You/We/They <b>don't (do not) play.</b>
He/She/It <b>plays.</b>	He/She/It <b>doesn't (does not) play.</b>

Yes / No questions	Short answers
<b>Do</b> I/you/we/they <b>play?</b>	Yes, I/you/we/they <b>do.</b> No, I/you/we/they <b>don't.</b>
<b>Does</b> he/she/it <b>play?</b>	Yes, he/she/it <b>does.</b> No, he/she/it <b>doesn't.</b>

Wh- questions
Where <b>do</b> I/you/we/they <b>live?</b>
<b>does</b> he/she/it <b>live?</b>

Subject questions
Who <b>lives</b> here?

### SPELLING RULES – THIRD PERSON SINGULAR:

- general rule: infinitive + -s, e.g. run – runs
- verbs ending in a consonant and -y: **y** + -ies, e.g. carry – carries
- verbs **do** and **go** and verbs ending in -ss, -x, -ch, -sh: + es, e.g. do – does, go – goes, push – pushes
- have: has

Common time expressions used with the Present Simple:

- always**
- regularly**
- usually**
- often**
- sometimes**
- never**
- every day / week / month**

### Present Continuous

We use the Present Continuous to talk about actions, events and changes happening at the moment of speaking:  
My dad **is painting** the kitchen right now.

Affirmative	Negative
I <b>am</b>	I <b>'m not (am not)</b>
You/We/They <b>are cleaning.</b>	You/We/They <b>aren't (are not) cleaning.</b>
He/She/It <b>is</b>	He/She/It <b>isn't (is not)</b>

Yes / No questions	Short answers
<b>Am</b> I <b>cleaning?</b>	Yes, I <b>am.</b> No, I <b>'m not.</b>
<b>Are</b> you/we/they <b>cleaning?</b>	Yes, you/we/they <b>are.</b> No, you/we/they <b>aren't.</b>
<b>Is</b> he/she/it <b>cleaning?</b>	Yes, he/she/it <b>is.</b> No, he/she/it <b>isn't.</b>

Wh- questions
<b>am</b> I <b>cleaning?</b>
<b>are</b> you/we/they <b>cleaning?</b>
<b>is</b> he/she/it <b>cleaning?</b>

Subject questions
Who <b>is cleaning</b> the windows?

### SPELLING RULES – THE -ING FORM:

- general rule: infinitive + -ing: cook – cooking
- verbs ending in a consonant + -e: **e** + -ing, e.g. make – making
- one-syllable verbs ending in a single vowel + a consonant: the consonant is doubled + -ing, e.g. swim – swimming

Common time expressions used with the Present Continuous:

- at the moment**
- now**
- today**
- this morning/afternoon**
- this year**
- these days**
- at present**

## Present Perfect

We use the Present Perfect to talk about actions and events which:

- finished in the past, but we don't know or it's not important exactly when they happened:  
*My friends **have seen** my new house.*
- started in the past and continue up to now:  
*We've **had** this TV for three years.*

When describing actions which started in the past and continue into the present, we often use *since* and *for*:

- since** describes when the action or state began:  
*since 2012/Sunday/last month/my birthday/I moved here*
- for** describes how long the action or state has continued:  
*for five minutes/a week/a long time/ages/most of my life*

Affirmative	Negative
I/You/ We/ They  <b>'ve</b> <b>(have)</b>  <b>finished.</b>	I/You/We/ They  <b>haven't</b> <b>(have not)</b>  <b>finished.</b>

He/ She/It  <b>'s</b> <b>(has)</b>	He/She/It  <b>hasn't</b> <b>(has not)</b>
--	--

Yes / No questions	Short answers
<b>Have</b> I/you/ we/they  <b>finished?</b>	Yes, I/you/we/they <b>have</b> . No, I/you/we/they <b>haven't</b> .
<b>Has</b> he/she/ it	Yes, he/she/it <b>has</b> . No, he/she/it <b>hasn't</b> .

### Wh- questions

What	<b>have</b> I/you/we/they	<b>learnt?</b>
	<b>has</b> he/she/it	

### Subject questions

Who	<b>has studied</b> French before?
-----	-----------------------------------

## SPELLING RULES – PAST PARTICIPLE FORM

### Regular verbs

- general rule: infinitive + *-ed*, e.g. *work – worked*
- verbs ending in *-e*: + *-d*, e.g. *like – liked*
- verbs ending in a consonant + *-y*: *y + -ied*, e.g. *cry – cried*
- one-syllable verbs ending in a single vowel + consonant\*: the consonant is doubled + *-ed*, e.g. *stop – stopped*  
\*except *-x* and *-w*, e.g. *boxed, flowed*
- two-syllable verbs ending in a vowel + consonant: the consonant is doubled when the stress is on the second syllable, e.g. *refer – referred*
- travel: although the stress is on the first syllable, *-l* is doubled, e.g. *travel – travelled*

## Irregular verbs

Many verbs have an irregular past participle form (e.g. *write, go, lose*). A list of irregular verbs can be found in the WORD STORE on page 25.

Pay attention to how we use the forms *been* and *gone*:

*Monica **has been** to the USA. (Sometime in the past, she is not there now).*

*Monica **has gone** to the USA. (She is there right now).*

### 1 Complete the sentences with the verbs in the boxes.

doesn't work   hasn't worked   isn't working

- Monica \_\_\_\_\_ today. She's sick.
- Fred \_\_\_\_\_ on Fridays. He's in the office from Monday to Thursday.
- John \_\_\_\_\_ for a long time. He can't find a job.

have been   have been to   have gone to

- My parents aren't at home – they \_\_\_\_\_ that new Italian restaurant.
- We \_\_\_\_\_ that new Italian restaurant twice – we really like it.
- There \_\_\_\_\_ many changes to my town over the years.

are you doing   do you do   have you done

- Why \_\_\_\_\_ your homework now? It's Friday evening.
- How often \_\_\_\_\_ experiments in your Chemistry class?
- What \_\_\_\_\_ to my dress? It looks awful now!

### 2 Complete the sentences with the correct present form of the verbs in brackets.

- Lucy's family \_\_\_\_\_ (not come) from the USA – they're English.
- How long \_\_\_\_\_ (you/live) in the countryside?
- My brother has gone to Austria for a few days. I'm sure he \_\_\_\_\_ (ski) now.
- How often \_\_\_\_\_ (your older brother/usually/visit) your parents?
- I \_\_\_\_\_ (have) this armchair for ages. It's old but comfortable.
- Gillian \_\_\_\_\_ (wear) a big cap and a long scarf because it's cold today.

# GRAMMAR FOCUS

## 0.2 Quantifiers

Nouns can be countable or uncountable.

### Countable nouns:

- have both singular and plural forms:  
*This **apple** is very sweet.*  
*These **apples** are very sweet.*
- can be used with *a/an/the* or a number:  
*an egg, the egg, the eggs, two eggs*

### Uncountable nouns

- have no plural form:  
*Milk is very healthy.*
- can be used with *the*, but not with *a/an* or a number:  
*water, the water* ~~*a water, one water*~~

We often use the following quantifiers with countable and uncountable nouns:

Countable nouns	Uncountable nouns
<b>how many?</b> <i>How <b>many</b> eggs are there?</i>	<b>how much?</b> <i>How <b>much</b> sugar is there?</i>
<b>many</b> <i>Are there <b>many</b> eggs?</i> <i>We haven't got <b>many</b> eggs.</i>	<b>much</b> <i>Is there <b>much</b> sugar?</i> <i>We haven't got <b>much</b> sugar.</i>
<b>a lot of/lots of</b>	
<i>There are <b>a lot of/lots of</b> eggs in the fridge.</i>	<i>There is <b>a lot of/lots of</b> sugar in the cupboard.</i>
<b>a few</b> <i>I need <b>a few</b> eggs.</i>	<b>a little</b> <i>I need <b>a little</b> sugar.</i>
<b>some</b>	
<i>There are <b>some</b> eggs in the fridge.</i>	<i>There is <b>some</b> sugar in the cupboard.</i>
<b>few</b> <i>There are <b>few</b> eggs in the fridge.</i>	<b>little</b> <i>There is <b>little</b> sugar in the cupboard.</i>
<b>any (?)</b>	
<i>Are there <b>any</b> eggs in the fridge?</i>	<i>Is there <b>any</b> sugar in the cupboard?</i>
<b>any (–)</b>	
<i>There aren't <b>any</b> eggs in the fridge.</i>	<i>There isn't <b>any</b> sugar in the cupboard.</i>

### 1 Choose the correct options.

- 1 *How many / How much* butter do I have to buy?
- 2 You've written a great essay. There are *much / lots of* good ideas.
- 3 My grandparents live on a farm and have *some / a little* chickens.
- 4 I can give you a *few / a little* tips if you need my help.
- 5 *How many / much* time do you need to clean the flat?
- 6 I have to get another job. At the end of the month I've got very *little / a little* money left.

### 2 Complete the sentences with quantifiers. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ people find it difficult to eat healthily.
- 2 I'm sure there was \_\_\_\_\_ chicken in the freezer.
- 3 Have you got \_\_\_\_\_ friends in London?
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_ days off school do we get for Christmas?
- 5 There aren't \_\_\_\_\_ cakes left – we've sold everything.
- 6 I've read \_\_\_\_\_ reviews for that new sushi restaurant in High Street.

## 0.3

## Present Perfect and Past Simple

## Present Perfect

We use the Present Perfect to talk about actions and events which finished in the past, but we don't know when or it's not important when exactly they happened:

My dad **has been** to many concerts.

Common time expressions used with the Present Perfect:

- **ever** – used in questions:  
*Have you **ever** danced in a shopping centre?*
- **never** – used in negative sentences:  
*My grandparents have **never** watched a film online.*
- **already** and **just** – used in affirmative sentences, between *have* and the past participle form of the main verb:  
*I have **already** read this book. They have **just** arrived.*
- **yet** – used in negative sentences or questions, at the end of the sentence:  
*She hasn't called **yet**. Has she called **yet**?*

## Past Simple

We use the Past Simple to talk about actions and events which started and finished in the past. We often say when they happened:

My dad **went** to a concert yesterday.

Affirmative		Negative	
I/You/He/ She/It/ We/They	<b>danced.</b>	I/You/He/ She/It/ We/They	<b>didn't (did not)</b> dance.
Yes / No questions		Short answers	
<b>Did</b>	I/you/ he/she/ it/we/ they <b>dance?</b>	Yes, I/you/he/she/it/we/they <b>did.</b> No, I/you/he/she/it/we/they <b>didn't.</b>	
Wh- questions			
Where	<b>did</b>	I/you/he/she/it/we/they	<b>dance?</b>
Subject questions			
Who	<b>danced</b>	in the shopping centre?	

## SPELLING RULES – PAST SIMPLE FORM

## Regular verbs

The rules for forming the Past Simple form of regular verbs are the same as those for the past participle form of regular verbs. (See section 0.1 on page 109.)

## Irregular verbs

Many verbs have an irregular Past Simple form (e.g. *write, go, lose*). There is a list of irregular verbs in the WORD STORE on page 25.

Common time expressions used with the Past Simple:

- **yesterday**
- **last**
- **ago**
- **when**
- **in the past**
- **then**

### 1 Use the prompts to write two Present Perfect sentences for each question: an affirmative one with **already** and a negative one with **yet**.

- 1 I / see / a flashmob
- 2 Sam / buy / a new jacket
- 3 we / shop online
- 4 you / have / a swimming lesson
- 5 Fiona and Frank / open / an online store
- 6 Sally / post / a video / on YouTube

### 2 Complete the conversations with the Present Perfect or Past Simple form of the verbs in brackets.

- 1 A: \_\_\_\_ (you/buy) a new dress for the party yet?  
B: No, not yet. But I \_\_\_\_ (go) shopping last weekend and I \_\_\_\_ (see) two really nice dresses.
- 2 A: When \_\_\_\_ (Lea/start) writing her fashion blog?  
B: Three months ago, I think. She talks a lot about it, but I \_\_\_\_ (not read) it yet!
- 3 A: \_\_\_\_ (you/ever/hear) about Scarlett Thompson?  
B: Oh yes, she's a British novelist. My sister \_\_\_\_ (read) all her books when she \_\_\_\_ (be) in hospital.
- 4 A: I \_\_\_\_ (just/cook) some pasta. Would you like some?  
B: No, thank you. We \_\_\_\_ (have) a three-course dinner just an hour ago.

### 3 Complete the sentences with the Present Perfect or Past Simple form of the verbs in brackets.

- 1 I \_\_\_\_ (learn) to play the guitar three years ago.
- 2 \_\_\_\_ (you/buy) a new suit yet?
- 3 Rob \_\_\_\_ (have) his first driving lesson yesterday.
- 4 When \_\_\_\_ (Helen/write) this song?
- 5 \_\_\_\_ (Mark/ever/visit) Chicago before?
- 6 Tom \_\_\_\_ (not open) a bank account yet.

# GRAMMAR FOCUS

## 0.4

### Comparative and superlative adjectives – too and enough

- We use the comparative form of adjectives and the word **than** when we want to compare two people or things:  
*This shirt is **cheaper than** the sweater.*
- We use the superlative form of adjectives to show that a person or thing has the highest degree of a certain quality (compared to at least two other people or things):  
*This is **the most expensive** ring in the shop.*
- To compare two people or things, we can also use (**not**) **as + adjective + as**:  
*This jacket is **not as comfortable as** that coat.*

Adjectives		Comparative	Superlative
<b>one-syllable adjectives</b>	young	younger	<b>the youngest</b>
	nice	nicer	<b>the nicest</b>
	hot	hotter	<b>the hottest</b>
<b>two-syllable adjectives ending in -y</b>	pretty	prettier	<b>the prettiest</b>
	dry	drier	<b>the driest</b>
<b>two-syllable or longer adjectives</b>	expensive	<b>more</b> expensive	<b>the most</b> expensive
	dangerous	<b>more</b> dangerous	<b>the most</b> dangerous
<b>irregular adjectives</b>	good	<b>better</b>	<b>the best</b>
	bad	<b>worse</b>	<b>the worst</b>
	far	<b>further</b>	<b>the furthest</b>

We often use **too** (= more than you need or want) and **not enough** (= less than you need or want) with adjectives. The patterns are: too + adjective and not + adjective + enough:

*The designer was **too busy** to talk to the press.*

*The horse wasn't **fast enough** to win the race.*

#### 1 Complete the sentences with one word in each gap.

- Are women \_\_\_\_\_ careful with money than men?
- I'm bad at football, but I'm even \_\_\_\_\_ at tennis.
- Black skinny jeans are the \_\_\_\_\_ fashionable trousers this season.
- Shopping with friends is better \_\_\_\_\_ shopping alone.
- This is \_\_\_\_\_ biggest shopping centre in our town.
- Denim jackets are as popular \_\_\_\_\_ leather jackets this season.

#### 2 Complete the sentences with the adjectives in brackets and too or enough.

- This bed isn't \_\_\_\_\_ (comfortable) for two people.
- I understand a lot of German, but I'm \_\_\_\_\_ (scared) to speak it.
- You can't park your car there. It is \_\_\_\_\_ (close) to the edge of the cliff!
- I'm afraid Jenny isn't \_\_\_\_\_ (talented) to become a famous singer.
- This box is \_\_\_\_\_ (heavy) for me; I can't lift it.

## 0.5

### Future forms

We use the Present Continuous for future plans and arrangements, usually with a time reference:

*I'm **leaving** tomorrow, so I can't go to the cinema with you.*

We use **be going to + infinitive** for:

- intentions and future plans which may change:  
*What **are you going to prepare** for lunch?*
- predictions about the future based on what we know and can see now:  
*We're **not going to get** to the station on time.*

We use **will + infinitive** for:

- decisions made at the time of speaking:  
*Wait for me! I'll **help** you with the shopping.*
- predictions about the future based on opinions, intuition or experience:  
*You can borrow my dictionary, but I'll **probably need** it back next week.*

#### 1 Complete the sentences with the verbs in the box. There are three extra verbs.

isn't going to rain 'll be 'll laugh  
'm going to laugh 're announcing 're taking  
's going to read 's having isn't raining

- The clouds have gone and the sky is clear. It \_\_\_\_\_.
- Your father \_\_\_\_\_ your school report after lunch.
- We \_\_\_\_\_ a taxi to get to the airport. I've already phoned for one.
- I'm sure Tom \_\_\_\_\_ disappointed that we didn't win the dancing competition.
- We \_\_\_\_\_ the winners of the competition on Friday.
- I promise I \_\_\_\_\_ at all your jokes.

#### 2 Choose the correct options.

- A:** Will you help / Are you helping me fix my car this weekend?  
**B:** Yes, why not?
- Don't worry! I'm sure all your problems *will disappear / are disappearing* soon.
- A:** Does your sister like music?  
**B:** She loves it. Actually, she *will take / is taking* part in a singing competition on Thursday.
- I need a new pair of trainers because we *'re playing / 'll play* football next weekend.
- A:** The chicken salad is very good in this restaurant.  
**B:** OK. I *'m going to have / 'll have* it.
- It's possible that in 2100 there *won't be / aren't going to be* any official school exams.

## 0.6 First and Second Conditionals

### First Conditional

We use First Conditional sentences to talk about things which may happen in the future under certain conditions:

If you **don't switch** on the printer, it **won't work**.

We use the Present Simple in the *if*-clause (describing the condition) and *will/won't* in the main clause (describing the effect). Either of the two clauses can come first in the sentence. If the *if*-clause comes first, we use a comma after it.

**If + Present Simple,**  
(condition)

If he **starts** a blog,

**will/won't + infinitive**  
(effect)

I'll **read** his blog

**will/won't + infinitive**  
(effect)

I'll **read** it.

**if + Present Simple**  
(condition)

if he **starts** one.

### Second Conditional

We use Second Conditional sentences to talk about present situations or states which are impossible or very unlikely, or about something that could happen in the future but is rather improbable:

If I **had** more time, I **would learn** programming.

We use the Past Simple in the *if*-clause (describing the condition) and *would/wouldn't* or *could/couldn't* in the main clause (describing the effect). Either of the two clauses can come first in the sentence. If the *if*-clause comes first, we use a comma after it.

**If + Past Simple,**  
(condition)

If your laptop **crashed**,

**would/wouldn't/could/couldn't + infinitive**  
(effect)

Who **would** you **ask** for help

**would/wouldn't/could/couldn't + infinitive**  
(effect)

who **would** you **ask** for help?

**if + Past Simple**  
(condition)

if your laptop **crashed**?

### 1 Choose the correct answer, A or B.

- If I get a pay rise,  
A I'll spend some money on a tablet.  
B I'd buy a new mobile phone.
- If you weren't so tired,  
A we can play a game together.  
B we could watch a film on my laptop.
- What would you tell Phil  
A if he asks to be your Facebook friend?  
B if he asked to borrow your camera?
- Will Rebecca be angry  
A if we comment on her blog?  
B if we posted a few of her photos online?
- If you were my true friend,  
A you won't talk to me like that.  
B you wouldn't ignore my text messages.
- If we were in London today,  
A we could go to a concert.  
B we can visit my friends.

### 2 Complete the First and Second Conditional sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

- If your family \_\_\_\_\_ (have) a pet dog, who \_\_\_\_\_ (take) it for a walk every morning?
- If my parents \_\_\_\_\_ (know) more about computers, they \_\_\_\_\_ (understand) why I need a new laptop.
- Hank \_\_\_\_\_ (not become) an IT specialist if he \_\_\_\_\_ (not go) to university.
- We \_\_\_\_\_ (wear) T-shirts and shorts all the year round if we \_\_\_\_\_ (live) in a hot country.
- If he \_\_\_\_\_ (not hurry up), he \_\_\_\_\_ (miss) the beginning of the film.
- What's wrong with you? If you \_\_\_\_\_ (not eat) your lunch, you \_\_\_\_\_ (be) hungry soon.

# GRAMMAR FOCUS

## 0.7

### Modal verbs for obligation and permission

To express obligation or necessity, we use:

- **must**, especially when we refer to something the speaker feels is necessary or important:  
*I **must** phone Mum.*
- **have to**, especially when we refer to something that is necessary because of a rule or law, or because someone else says so:  
*We **have to** wear a uniform at school.*
- **need to**:  
*Ann often **needs to** look after her younger sister.*

To express lack of obligation or necessity, we use:

- **don't have to**:  
*My dad **doesn't have to** wake up early. He starts work at twelve.*
- **don't need to/needn't**:  
*You **don't need to** go to university this year.*
- You **needn't** do the washing up. *We've got a dishwasher.*

To express permission, we use:

- **can**:  
*You **can** invite some friends if you want.*
- **be allowed to**:  
*Students **are allowed to** work part-time.*

To express lack of permission or prohibition, we use:

- **can't**:  
*You **can't** leave the classroom without permission from your teacher.*
- **mustn't**:  
*You **mustn't** play loud music after 10 p.m.*
- **not be allowed to**:  
*You **aren't allowed to** speak during the exam.*

#### 1 Complete the sentences with the verbs in the box.

are allowed to   can't   doesn't have to  
don't have to   have to   is allowed to  
must   needs to

- 1 Helen \_\_\_\_\_ stay at home today because she was in the office on Saturday.
- 2 Richard \_\_\_\_\_ walk his dog now – his dad has already done it.
- 3 I'm afraid you \_\_\_\_\_ use a dictionary during the test. Please put it back on the shelf.
- 4 I \_\_\_\_\_ go now – my friends are waiting for me.
- 5 It was great to meet you, Alex. We \_\_\_\_\_ do it more often.
- 6 My sister is a student, but she still \_\_\_\_\_ phone my parents every day.
- 7 Ally and Mike \_\_\_\_\_ be at home at 9 p.m. on Saturdays, so they usually stay out until 10 or 11 p.m.
- 8 My younger brothers \_\_\_\_\_ play video games for an hour a day only, but they would like to do it more often.

#### 2 Choose the correct options.

- 1 John *is allowed to* / *can't* / *must* go on holiday on his own – he's too young.
- 2 Students *don't have to* / *mustn't* / *can* call their teachers by their first names – it's a very modern school.
- 3 You *can't* / *needn't* / *need* to be by the school gate at 3 o'clock. Don't be late!
- 4 We *are allowed to* / *have to* / *mustn't* stand up when the headmaster enters the room – he's very formal.
- 5 Teenagers *have to* / *mustn't* / *needn't* study hard for their exams if they want to get into university.
- 6 He *has to* / *is allowed to* / *mustn't* phone them when he is going to be home late or they get worried.
- 7 You *must* / *need to* / *don't have to* bring any food. My aunt is going to prepare everything.
- 8 Victor *isn't allowed to* / *needn't* / *can* go out during the week. His parents are very strict.

#### 3 Complete the sentences with **must** or **have/has to**.

- 1 We \_\_\_\_\_ go to school this Saturday – we're having a rehearsal for a new play.
- 2 I've heard it's a great novel. I \_\_\_\_\_ read it!
- 3 All students \_\_\_\_\_ wear uniforms in my school.
- 4 Does Amy \_\_\_\_\_ work in the café three times a week?
- 5 I'm really tired. I \_\_\_\_\_ go to bed early tonight.
- 6 I don't think Jo has heard the news yet. You \_\_\_\_\_ text her as soon as possible.
- 7 Visitors \_\_\_\_\_ switch off their mobiles here.
- 8 What do we \_\_\_\_\_ prepare for our next English class?

## 0.8 Defining relative clauses

We use defining relative clauses to give important information about a person, thing, place, etc., so that it's clear which one we are talking about. We use the following relative pronouns:

- **who** and **that** to refer to people:  
*I have a friend **who/that** works as a console game teacher.*
- **which** and **that** to refer to objects:  
*The computer **which/that** I use at work is very slow.*
- **where** to refer to places:  
*This is the office **where** I work.*
- **whose** to show possession:  
*I don't know **whose** book this is.*
- **why** to give to a reason or explanation:  
*Can you tell me the reason **why** you are late?*

We can leave out the relative pronouns *who*, *which* and *that* when they are followed by a noun or pronoun:  
*Are you reading the report (**which/that**) I have written?*

### 1 Match the sentence beginnings 1–6 with the endings a–f.

- This is the professor \_\_\_\_
  - Most of the products \_\_\_\_
  - An IT company \_\_\_\_
  - This letter comes from a company \_\_\_\_
  - I know a lot of people \_\_\_\_
  - This is the university \_\_\_\_
- which we buy come from China.
  - which offers good services doesn't need advertising.
  - who come from South America.
  - which wants to employ me.
  - who teaches me a lot of useful things.
  - where I studied business.

### 2 Choose all the answers that are possible.

- This is the company car \_\_\_\_ I told you about.  
A who B which C where D that E Ø
- The woman \_\_\_\_ is talking to the receptionist is the manager's wife.  
A who B which C where D that E Ø
- All the people \_\_\_\_ work in my department are from the USA.  
A who B which C where D that E Ø
- The hotel \_\_\_\_ we're staying is in Wellington Street.  
A who B which C where D that E Ø
- I'd like to buy a printer \_\_\_\_ is quick and quiet.  
A who B which C where D that E Ø
- During my gap year I stayed in a village \_\_\_\_ there were no doctors.  
A who B which C where D that E Ø

## 1.2 Dynamic and state verbs

Dynamic verbs like *do*, *work* and *play* describe actions and can be used in both types of tenses – simple (e.g. the Present Simple) and continuous (e.g. the Present Continuous):

*I often **listen** to classical music.*

*I'm **listening** to Mozart now.*

State (or stative) verbs include:

- attitude verbs (describing feelings, emotions, preferences, etc.). e.g. *hate, like, love, prefer*
- mental/thinking verbs, e.g. *believe, know, need, remember, think, understand, want*
- sense/perception verbs, e.g. *feel, hear, see*.

State verbs are mostly used in simple tenses, even if they refer to something happening at the moment of speaking:

***Do** you **understand** me?*

***Does** she **want** to go to the music festival?*

Some state verbs can be used in the continuous form, but with a change in meaning (e.g. *think, have, look*):

***Do** I **look** good in this dress?*

*What **are** you **looking** at?*

### 1 Choose the correct options.

- I *think* / *'m thinking* about going to a fashion show tomorrow.
- I *don't think* / *'m not thinking* the show was a success.
- Do you have* / *Are you having* a favourite fashion designer?
- Does Tim have* / *Is Tim having* breakfast right now?
- What *does Sally look* / *is Sally looking* like? Is she tall?

### 2 Complete the conversations with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

- A: \_\_\_\_ (George/talk) to that fashion journalist in French?  
B: No way! He \_\_\_\_ (not speak) any foreign languages.
- A: \_\_\_\_ (you/like) reading fashion magazines?  
B: Of course. I \_\_\_\_ (buy) a few every month.
- A: Why \_\_\_\_ (he/want) to buy that expensive suit?  
B: Because he \_\_\_\_ (think) it will make him look smarter.
- A: You \_\_\_\_ (look) miserable. What's wrong?  
B: I \_\_\_\_ (not usually/wear) high-heeled shoes and the ones I \_\_\_\_ (wear) today are very uncomfortable.

# GRAMMAR FOCUS

## 1.5 Present Perfect Simple and Continuous

We use the Present Perfect Continuous to talk about:

- actions which started in the past and continue into the present:  
*I **have been waiting** for her since 8 o'clock.*
- events which lasted for some time (and may continue into the present) and whose results can be seen now:  
*I'm tired because I **'ve been painting** all day.*

Like the Present Perfect Simple, common time expressions used with the Present Perfect Continuous include *for* and *since*.

Affirmative		Negative	
I/You/We/ They	<b>'ve (have)</b>  <b>been crying.</b>	I/ You/ We/ They	<b>haven't (have not)</b>  <b>been crying.</b>
He/She/It	<b>'s (has)</b>	He/ She/ It	<b>hasn't (has not)</b>
Yes / No questions		Short answers	
<b>Have</b>	I/you/we/ they  <b>been crying?</b>	Yes, I/you/we/they <b>have.</b> No, I/you/we/they <b>haven't.</b>	
<b>Has</b>	he/she/it	Yes, he/she/it <b>has.</b> No, he/she/it <b>hasn't.</b>	
Wh- questions		Subject questions	
How long	<b>have</b> I/you/ we/ they  <b>has</b> he/ she/it  <b>been crying?</b>	Who	<b>has</b> <b>been crying?</b>

### Present Perfect Continuous or Present Perfect Simple?

- We use the Present Perfect Continuous to focus on an action or process (which may or may not be complete). Questions in the Present Perfect Continuous often begin with *how long*:  
***How long has she been writing** books?*
- We use the Present Perfect Simple to focus on an achievement or the result of an action. Questions in the Present Perfect Simple often begin with *how many*:  
***How many books has he written?***
- We don't use *when* in questions in either of the two tenses.
- State verbs are generally used in the Present Perfect Simple only.

### 1 Use the prompts to write sentences in the Present Perfect Continuous. Add *since* or *for* where necessary.

- I / study / art / 2009
- how long / you / wear / your glasses?
- you / swim / all afternoon?
- it / rain / two hours now
- we / not watch / the match
- my parents / study / English / five years
- how long / Joanna / work / in that café?
- amy / surf / the Internet / all day?
- my sister / work / as a photographer / three years
- Hannah and Eve / revise / for their exam / all evening?

### 2 Choose the correct options.

- I've *looked* / *been looking* for you for an hour!
- How many paintings have you *sold* / *been selling*?
- We have *travelled* / *been travelling* for a couple of weeks now.
- The professor has *answered* / *been answering* more than 100 questions about the Louvre.
- John has *known* / *been knowing* Cynthia since primary school.
- I've *seen* / *been seeing* most of his paintings. They are all amazing!
- How long *have you waited* / *have you been waiting*?
- Have you *written* / *been writing* your essay all morning?
- How many art galleries has Dan *been visiting* / *visited* today?
- How long have you *had* / *been having* this painting by van Gogh?

### 3 Complete the sentences about you. Use the Present Perfect Simple or Continuous.

- \_\_\_\_\_ since last weekend.
- \_\_\_\_\_ for at least a month.
- \_\_\_\_\_ since my last birthday party.
- \_\_\_\_\_ since yesterday.
- \_\_\_\_\_ for more than a year.
- \_\_\_\_\_ since I was ten.
- \_\_\_\_\_ for two days.
- \_\_\_\_\_ since I was a small child.

## 2.2 Narrative tenses

We use the Past Continuous:

- to describe a background scene in a story or in a description of a main event:  
*On the day of the match it **was raining** and the fans **were getting** wet.*
- to talk about an action that was in progress when another action took place (for the shorter action, which happened while the longer one was in progress, we use the Past Simple):  
*I **was riding** my bike when the policeman **stopped** me.*

We use the Past Simple for a series of actions that happened one after the other:

*Julia **got up** and **put on** her trainers.*

We use the Past Perfect to talk about an action that happened before another action in the past (for the action that came second, we use the Past Simple):

*In the taxi I realised that I **had left** the ticket at home.*

### 1 Complete the sentences with the Past Simple or Past Continuous form of the verbs in brackets.

- John \_\_\_\_\_ (walk) towards the stadium when he \_\_\_\_\_ (hear) a loud explosion.
- The play \_\_\_\_\_ (end) and everyone \_\_\_\_\_ (leave) the theatre.
- \_\_\_\_\_ (Sue/work) at the restaurant when she \_\_\_\_\_ (meet) Frank?
- We \_\_\_\_\_ (cross) High Street when we \_\_\_\_\_ (see) a bank robbery.
- While I \_\_\_\_\_ (watch) tennis on TV, my sisters \_\_\_\_\_ (play) a computer game.
- What \_\_\_\_\_ (you/do) when I \_\_\_\_\_ (call) you last night?

### 2 Join the sentences using the word in capitals and the Past Simple or Past Perfect.

- I saw Lionel Messi in the street. Nobody believed it. **THAT**  
Nobody believed \_\_\_\_\_.
- The match started. Then I got back home. **WHEN**  
The match \_\_\_\_\_.
- Jack's team didn't train enough. They lost the match. **BECAUSE**  
Jack's team \_\_\_\_\_.
- Ann looked at her watch. She realised she was late for the meeting. **AND**  
Ann \_\_\_\_\_.
- Andrew didn't lock his car. Somebody stole it. **BECAUSE**  
Somebody \_\_\_\_\_.
- The film finished. Then Mark switched the TV on. **ALREADY**  
When Mark \_\_\_\_\_.

## 2.5 Verb patterns

Verbs which follow other verbs follow different patterns:

- after *aim, arrange, attempt, can't afford, decide, expect, hope, intend, manage, offer, plan, refuse, remember, seem, tend, try, want*: **to-infinitive**:  
*They **decided not to work** with the sports psychologist.*
- after *advise, allow, encourage, force, remind, teach, urge, warn*: **object + to-infinitive**:  
*She **taught me to believe** in myself.*
- after *avoid, can't help, can't stand, don't mind, enjoy, fancy, finish, imagine, keep, miss, stop, waste time*: **-ing**:  
*Just **imagine winning** the competition!*
- after modal verbs: *can, could, might, should*: **infinitive**:  
*You **should answer** his question right now.*
- after *make* and *let*: **object + infinitive**:  
*They **let me visit** the stadium.*

### 1 Choose the correct options.

- Can you imagine *playing / to play* tennis with Rafael Nadal?
- Howard managed *to score / scoring* four points in the match.
- My sports teacher advised *me not to train / not to train* so hard.
- Mum and Dad are encouraging *me trying / me to try* the exam.
- They can't make you *do / doing* your homework!
- I think Manchester City might *win / to win* the cup this season.

### 2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets. Add *me* or *you* where necessary.

- I can \_\_\_\_\_ (ski) really well, but I've never tried snowboarding.
- Did your parents make \_\_\_\_\_ (play) the piano when you were a child?
- I can't afford \_\_\_\_\_ (buy) a new tennis racket. It's too expensive.
- This pool is OK, but I miss \_\_\_\_\_ (swim) in the ocean.
- My PE teacher at school encouraged \_\_\_\_\_ (pursue) my passion for swimming.
- The footballer refused \_\_\_\_\_ (join) the national team.
- You shouldn't waste so much time \_\_\_\_\_ (watch) TV.
- The doctor has warned \_\_\_\_\_ (not go) running for a month.

# GRAMMAR FOCUS

## 3.2 Present and past speculation

### Speculating about the present

When speculating about a present situation, we use a modal verb + infinitive. We use:

- **must**, to express a strong belief that something is true:  
*John **must** be happy working at the zoo.*
- **might, may** and **could**, when we think that it's possible that something is true:  
*The lions **might / may / could** be hungry now.*
- **can't**, to express a strong belief that something isn't true:  
*It **can't** be a domestic cat. It's too big.*

### Speculating about the past

When speculating about a past situation or event, we use a modal verb + **have** + the past participle form of the main verb. We use:

- **must have**, to express a strong belief that something happened:  
*You **must have** lost your mobile at the zoo.*
- **might have, may have** and **could have**, when we think that it's possible that something happened:  
*Lucy **might / may / could have** missed the train.*
- **can't have** and **couldn't have**, to express a strong belief that something didn't happen:  
*Peter **can't / couldn't have** gone home.*

#### 1 Choose the correct options.

- 1 The key **can't / must** be somewhere here, but I can't find it right now.
- 2 You **can't / may** remember me – we met on a trip to China last year.
- 3 What? You forgot your ticket and passport? You **might / can't** be serious!
- 4 You failed the exam, so your answers **must / can't** have been wrong.
- 5 I'm not sure if you are right. You **could / can't** have made a mistake.

#### 2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

- 1 I might \_\_\_\_ (leave) my mobile at the hotel, but I don't remember.
- 2 Susan has been travelling for the last two weeks – she must \_\_\_\_ (be) very tired by now.
- 3 Wendy's accent is a bit strange. She could \_\_\_\_ (be) Northern Irish, but I'm not sure.
- 4 You can't \_\_\_\_ (see) Joe in town at noon – he was at home with me.
- 5 Thomas has been really upset recently. He must \_\_\_\_ (have) problems at home.

## 3.5 used to and would

We use **used to / would** (+ infinitive) to talk about past states or actions that happened regularly in the past:

- We use **used to** for states (e.g. *be, have, believe, like, love, live*) or actions:  
*I **didn't use to like** travelling by plane. (But I do now.)*  
*She **used to write** travel guides. (But she doesn't any more.)*
- We use **would** for actions (but not states), usually in affirmative sentences:  
*As a teenager, I **would visit** my grandma every Sunday.*

#### Affirmative

*I **used to go** backpacking every summer.*  
*I **would go** backpacking every summer.*

#### Negative

*I **didn't use to buy** flight tickets online.*

#### Yes / No questions

***Did** he **use to** go on holiday in August?*

#### Wh- questions

*What **did** he **use to** eat?*

#### Subject questions

*Who **used to go** camping?*

When we talk about a single past action or when we don't want to emphasise the difference between the past and the present, we use the Past Simple instead of **used to/would**:  
*I often **travelled** to China.*

We don't use **used to** or **would** for single past actions:  
*Two years ago they **went** on holiday to France.*

#### 1 Use the prompts to write sentences with **would**. If **would** is not possible, use **used to**.

- 1 Jill / get / home / at 7 p.m. every day
- 2 we / not have / a lot of money / in those days
- 3 my family / live / next to a luxury hotel
- 4 Damien / not drink / coffee / in the past
- 5 as a child / I / like / reading adventure novels
- 6 my grandparents / not travel / by car
- 7 when I was a child / I / be / very shy
- 8 they / go / on summer camps / at primary school

#### 2 Choose all the answers that are possible.

- 1 Like many boys, I \_\_\_\_ to be a pilot when I grew up.  
A wanted      B used to want      C would want
- 2 I \_\_\_\_ like jazz when I was at school.  
A didn't      B didn't use to      C wouldn't
- 3 Last Sunday Jack \_\_\_\_ too late to catch the train.  
A turned up      B used to turn up      C would turn up
- 4 My parents \_\_\_\_ me to the seaside every summer.  
A took      B used to take      C would take
- 5 Dad, \_\_\_\_ a happy child?  
A were you      B did you use to be      C would you be
- 6 Yesterday we \_\_\_\_ our flight back to Australia.  
A missed      B used to miss      C would miss

## 4.2 Future time clauses

In sentences referring to the future, we use the Present Simple after the following conjunctions:

- **if**  
*If you don't have breakfast at home, you will feel hungry very soon.*
- **when**  
*We will cook the pasta **when** Luigi arrives.*
- **unless**  
*You won't lose weight **unless** you eat fruit and vegetables every day.*
- **before**  
*I'll brush my teeth **before** I go to bed.*
- **after**  
*We'll have some coffee **after** we get back home.*
- **until**  
*I'll wait for you **until** you finish your homework.*
- **as soon as**  
*I'll call you **as soon as** I finish.*
- **as long as**  
*I'll make breakfast **as long as** you do the washing-up.*

### 1 Choose the correct options.

- 1 The chef won't get / doesn't get a pay rise unless she will start to cook / starts to cook better.
- 2 We will wait / wait for you until you will finish / finish work.
- 3 Sally won't eat / doesn't eat anything unless you will cut / cut her food up.
- 4 Sir, the waiter will serve / serves you the food when it will be / is ready.
- 5 You 'll love / love this dessert as soon as you 'll try / try it.
- 6 Sarah and Jane go / will go to that new Greek restaurant to celebrate as soon as they finish / will finish their final exams.
- 7 Tim works / will work part-time in a café until he finds / will find a new job.
- 8 I will go / go to a cooking school when I will finish / finish secondary school.

### 2 Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Use **unless**.

- 1 You won't get fit if you don't exercise regularly.  
You won't get fit \_\_\_\_\_ regularly.
- 2 I won't finish cooking on time if you don't help me!  
I won't finish cooking on time \_\_\_\_\_ me.
- 3 If you don't hurry up, we'll be late!  
\_\_\_\_\_, we'll be late!
- 4 If I don't phone you to say I can't come, I will see you at ten.  
I'll see you at ten \_\_\_\_\_ to say I can't come.
- 5 I'll have the last piece of the cake if none of the kids want it.  
I'll have the last piece of the cake \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 Jerry won't help me if I don't ask him.  
Jerry won't help me \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7 Denise will come with us tomorrow if she doesn't have to babysit.  
Denise will come with us tomorrow \_\_\_\_\_.
- 8 If we don't buy fresh fish today, we won't be able to make sushi for the party.  
We won't be able to make sushi for the party \_\_\_\_\_.

### 3 Join the sentences using the words in capitals.

- 1 I'll eat my breakfast. It will get cold. **BEFORE**
- 2 I'll find a can of tuna. I will make a tuna salad.  
**AS LONG AS**
- 3 We'll go to the market tomorrow. We'll buy some meat.  
**IF**
- 4 We won't order any food. Jack will get here soon. **UNTIL**
- 5 You'll be able to check your emails later. Finish your lunch first. **AFTER**
- 6 Jack will work as a waiter. He'll be promoted to restaurant manager. **UNTIL**
- 7 Monica will finish lunch. She'll call you back.  
**AS SOON AS**
- 8 Eric will help you with your homework. He will come home. **WHEN**

# GRAMMAR FOCUS

## 4.5 Future Continuous and Future Perfect

### Future Continuous

We use the Future Continuous to talk about actions which will be in progress at a particular time in the future:

We **will be making** a cake **at 5 p.m.**

Affirmative			Negative		
I/You/He/ She/It/We/ They	<b>'ll</b> (will)	<b>be working</b> at 10 a.m.	I/You/ He/She/ It/We/ They	<b>won't</b> (will not)	<b>be working</b> at 10 a.m.
Yes / No questions			Short answers		
<b>Will</b>	I/you/he/ she/it/we/ they	<b>be working</b> at 10 a.m.?	Yes, I/you/he/she/it/we/ they <b>will</b> .	No, I/you/he/she/it/we/ they <b>won't</b> .	
Wh- questions			Subject questions		
What	<b>will</b>	I/you/he/ she/it/ we/they <b>be doing</b> at 10 a.m.?	Who	<b>will</b>	<b>be working</b> at 10 a.m.?

### Future Perfect

We use the Future Perfect to talk about actions or situations which will be completed before a particular time in the future:

I **will have cooked** all the dishes **by 3 o'clock**.

Affirmative			Negative		
I/You/He/ She/It/ We/They	<b>'ll</b> (will)	<b>have finished</b> lunch by 2 p.m.	I/You/ He/ She/ It/We/ They	<b>won't</b> (will not)	<b>have finished</b> lunch by 2 p.m.
Yes / No questions			Short answers		
<b>Will</b>	I/you/ he/ she/ it/we/ they	<b>have finished</b> lunch by 2 p.m.?	Yes, I/you/he/she/it/we/ they <b>will</b> .	No, I/you/he/she/it/we/they <b>won't</b> .	
Wh- questions			Subject questions		
What	<b>will</b>	I/you/ he/ she/ it/we/ they <b>have finished</b> lunch by 2 p.m.?	Who	<b>will</b>	<b>have finished</b> lunch by 2 p.m.?

### 1 Choose the correct options.

- A:** Can we meet at 1 p.m. on Saturday?  
**B:** Sorry, I *'ll be having* / *'ll have had* lunch with my family.
- A:** Do you need a lot of time to finish this birthday cake?  
**B:** No, I *'ll be decorating* / *'ll have decorated* it by 12 o'clock.
- A:** What is John so worried about?  
**B:** Getting a new job. If he doesn't find one, he *'ll be spending* / *'ll have spent* all his money by the end of the year.
- A:** Tom, I really need to return that library book tomorrow.  
**B:** No problem. I *'ll be finishing* / *'ll have finished* it by then.
- A:** *Will you be seeing* / *Will you have seen* your boyfriend tonight?  
**B:** Yes, he's taking me out to a restaurant.
- A:** What *will you be doing* / *will you have done* at 7 p.m. tomorrow?  
**B:** I don't have any plans. Shall we go to the cinema?

### 2 Complete the sentences with the Future Continuous or Future Perfect form of the verbs in brackets.

- Don't phone me before 9 a.m., I \_\_\_\_\_ (sleep)!
- By the end of the month she \_\_\_\_\_ (finish) her training as a waitress.
- Peter, \_\_\_\_\_ (you/use) the oven this evening? I'd like to make pizza.
- I'm going to do a cookery course in September. So now I'm helping at my mum's restaurant. I hope I \_\_\_\_\_ (learn) something useful by the end of the summer.
- How many exams \_\_\_\_\_ (you/take) by the end of the academic year?
- What \_\_\_\_\_ (Sam/do) this time tomorrow?

## 5.2 Articles: a/an or the, no article

We do *not* use an article:

- when we are talking about something in general:  
**Primary education** is compulsory in this country.  
**Farmers** in poor countries earn very little money.
- before the names of continents and most countries and towns:  
in Europe, in Spain, in Berlin  
**Exceptions:** in the United States, in the United Kingdom, in the Netherlands, in the Hague

We use **a/an**:

- when we mention something for the first time or to refer to any one of a kind or group:  
I've bought **a** new car. London is **a** big city.
- when talking about someone's job:  
Lucy is **a** doctor.

We use **the**:

- to refer to something that we have mentioned before:  
He lived in **a** big city. **The** city was polluted.
- to refer to something specific or unique:  
I like **the** colour of that shirt. Who is **the** King of Spain?
- to refer to a period in history:  
**the** Renaissance
- with the superlative forms of adjectives:  
**the** worst
- with ordinal numbers:  
**the** third

### 1 Complete the sentences with a/an or the.

- My mum's \_\_\_\_\_ secondary school teacher.
- I was born on \_\_\_\_\_ 16 January.
- What do you want for lunch: \_\_\_\_\_ chicken sandwich or \_\_\_\_\_ piece of pizza?
- Is Sydney \_\_\_\_\_ biggest city in Australia?
- It's \_\_\_\_\_ first time I've been to \_\_\_\_\_ USA.
- Leonardo da Vinci lived during \_\_\_\_\_ Renaissance.

### 2 Complete the sentences with a/an, the or Ø (no article).

- Wendy is \_\_\_\_\_ famous artist. You can see her paintings in \_\_\_\_\_ best museums in \_\_\_\_\_ world.
- I think that \_\_\_\_\_ private health care is going to become more popular soon.
- \_\_\_\_\_ capital of \_\_\_\_\_ Netherlands isn't \_\_\_\_\_ Hague. It's \_\_\_\_\_ Amsterdam.
- \_\_\_\_\_ scientist has said recently that \_\_\_\_\_ cities haven't changed much since \_\_\_\_\_ nineteenth century.
- Yesterday my brother asked me \_\_\_\_\_ question about natural disasters. I didn't know \_\_\_\_\_ answer.
- Do you think \_\_\_\_\_ secondary school students should wear \_\_\_\_\_ uniforms?

## 5.5 Non-defining relative clauses

- Non-defining relative clauses give additional information about the person, thing, place, etc. we are talking about. The sentence still makes sense without this information.  
*Giant pandas, **which** are endangered species, live in the mountains in central China.* → *Giant pandas live in the mountains in central China.*
- We use commas to separate a non-defining relative clause from the rest of the sentence.
- We use *who*, *which*, *where* and *whose* (but not *that*) in non-defining relative clauses:  
*Last year we visited our friends on the Aran islands, **where** you can see lots of bird species.*
- We can't leave out the relative pronouns in non-defining relative clauses.

### 1 Complete the sentences with *who*, *which*, *where* or *whose*.

- That young man over there, \_\_\_\_\_ name I can't remember at the moment, is a famous ecologist.
- We went on an expedition to the Amazon, \_\_\_\_\_ none of us had ever been before.
- The doctor, \_\_\_\_\_ can't have been older than thirty, examined Lisa's leg carefully.
- Mrs Janet McGregor's favourite holiday destination is London, \_\_\_\_\_ people don't recognise her.
- One of my friends, \_\_\_\_\_ wife runs a big business, has made a big donation to an environmental charity.
- The elephants, \_\_\_\_\_ were drinking water from the river, suddenly became very anxious.

### 2 Use the information in brackets to add a non-defining relative clause to each sentence.

- The company plans to build a skyscraper here. (The company's owner is Tania Hillman.)
- This T-shirt is a prize in the competition. (This T-shirt is made of organic cotton.)
- Sandra saw giant pandas last year in China. (Sandra studies zoology.)
- I'm moving to Belfast. (I'll work at a travel agency there.)
- Padua attracts many tourists in the summer. (Padua is very close to Venice.)
- Frank studies science. (His brother is a biologist.)

# GRAMMAR FOCUS

## 6.2

### Second Conditional; wish/if only

#### Second Conditional sentences

We use Second Conditional sentences to talk about present situations or states which are impossible or very unlikely or about something that could happen in the future but is rather improbable. Either of the two clauses can come first in the sentence. When the *if*-clause comes first, we use a comma after it.

If you **had** an accident, who **would** you **call** first?

**If + Past Simple,**  
(condition)

**would/wouldn't + infinitive**  
(effect)

If he **cycled** to work every day,

he **would feel** healthier.

**would/wouldn't + infinitive**  
(effect)

**if + Past Simple**  
(condition)

He **would feel** healthier

if he **cycled** to work every day.

#### wish/if only

We use **wish/if only + Past Simple** to express dissatisfaction with a present situation:

**I wish/if only** people **cared** more about their health.

We use **wish/if only + would + infinitive** to talk about a present situation that we would like to be different, usually when we find it annoying. It usually refers to things we can't change or control:

**I wish/if only** my sister **would hurry up!**

#### 1 Complete the Second Conditional sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

- I \_\_\_\_\_ (not take up) jogging if I \_\_\_\_\_ (have) breathing problems.
- People in my city \_\_\_\_\_ (do) sport more often if there \_\_\_\_\_ (be) more sports centres.
- What \_\_\_\_\_ (you/do) if your teacher \_\_\_\_\_ (ask) you to play in the school basketball team?
- If my grandfather \_\_\_\_\_ (have) a dog, he \_\_\_\_\_ (go) for walks more often.
- If you \_\_\_\_\_ (see) an accident, \_\_\_\_\_ (you/be) able to give someone first aid?
- I \_\_\_\_\_ (not apply) for this job as a nurse in France if I \_\_\_\_\_ (not know) the language.

#### 2 Choose the correct options.

- My neighbours are very annoying. If only they *stopped* / *would stop* their dog chasing after my cat!
- My sister usually makes wrong decisions. If only she *follows* / *would follow* my advice!
- I wish this pain *went* / *would go* away.
- I want to go to school today. I wish I *didn't have* / *wouldn't have* a temperature.
- If only I *can* / *could* go to school by motorcycle!
- I wish my leg *didn't* / *doesn't* hurt so much.

#### 3 Match sentences 1–5 with sentences a–e.

- It smells in here because Terry smokes.
  - You don't look very well these days.
  - I can't afford to go on holiday.
  - I have a lot of problems with my neighbours.
  - Sarah knows that I don't like that boy Andrew!
- If only I earned more money.
  - I wish she would stop seeing him.
  - I wish he wouldn't do it in the house.
  - If only they didn't argue so much.
  - If I were you, I'd see a doctor.

## 6.5 Third Conditional

We use Third Conditional sentences to talk about possible events in the past that did not happen. We often use them to express regret or criticism.

We use the Past Perfect in the *if*-clause (describing the condition). In the main clause (describing the effect, we use) *would/wouldn't + have + the past participle* of the main verb. Either of the two clauses can come first in the sentence. When the *if*-clause comes first, we use a comma after it.

*If I **had worn** a helmet, I **wouldn't have got** hurt so badly.*

**If + Past Perfect,**  
(condition)

**would/wouldn't have  
+ Past Participle**  
(effect)

*If I **had cycled** more carefully, I **wouldn't have broken** my arm.*

**would/wouldn't have  
+ Past Participle**  
(effect)

**if + Past Perfect**  
(condition)

*I **wouldn't have broken** my arm*

*if I **had cycled** more carefully.*

### 1 Match the sentence beginnings 1–5 with the endings a–f.

- 1 We would have lost our way \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 If you had left earlier, \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 They wouldn't have got into difficulties \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 If she had known his real character, \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 If I had prepared for that trip better, \_\_\_\_\_

- a she wouldn't have married him.
- b if the rescue team had arrived earlier.
- c you would have caught the train.
- d if we hadn't had our GPS with us.
- e I would have enjoyed it much more!

### 2 Complete the Third Conditional sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ (the explorers/survive) if they \_\_\_\_\_ (take) better equipment?
- 2 If Liu \_\_\_\_\_ (not warn) me, I \_\_\_\_\_ (make) a serious mistake.
- 3 If you \_\_\_\_\_ (leave) an hour earlier, \_\_\_\_\_ (you/miss) the plane?
- 4 If I \_\_\_\_\_ (not take) a torch with me, I \_\_\_\_\_ (not find) my way out.
- 5 What \_\_\_\_\_ (you/do) if your parents \_\_\_\_\_ (not let) you take a gap year?
- 6 If Tom \_\_\_\_\_ (not find) a hospital quickly, he \_\_\_\_\_ (die) after the snake bite.

### 3 Write a Third Conditional sentence for each situation.

- 1 They didn't reach the North Pole because they ran out of food.
- 2 I was tired yesterday, so I didn't go out with my friends.
- 3 It took us ages to get to the airport because there was a lot of traffic.
- 4 Ann didn't phone me, so I didn't know about her problems with the equipment.
- 5 He had an accident in the mountains and had to go to hospital.
- 6 Gina didn't use a mosquito net, so a mosquito bit her and she became ill with malaria.
- 7 Joe didn't wear warm clothes last weekend, so he caught a cold.
- 8 We didn't reach our destination because the weather conditions were very bad.

# GRAMMAR FOCUS

## 7.2

### Reported Speech – statements

When we want to report what someone said, we can use Direct or Reported Speech.

In Direct Speech the speaker's words are not changed in any way: 'Your son draws very well.' → *They said, 'Your son draws very well.'*

In Reported Speech we often report the speaker's words using verbs like *add, claim, explain, point out, reply, say, suggest, tell* and the pronoun *that* (which can be omitted). The verb *tell* takes an object (*me, us, John, my friend, etc.*).

'I sell paintings.' → *She **told me/said (that)** she **sold** paintings.*

We make the following changes in Reported Speech:

- tenses:

Direct Speech	→	Reported Speech
<b>Present Simple</b> Ann: 'I paint pictures.'	→	<b>Past Simple</b> Ann said (that) she painted pictures.
<b>Present Continuous</b> Ann: 'I am painting a picture.'	→	<b>Past Continuous</b> Ann said (that) she was painting a picture.
<b>Present Perfect</b> Ann: 'I have painted two pictures.'	→	<b>Past Perfect</b> Ann said (that) she had painted two pictures.
<b>Past Simple</b> Ann: 'I didn't paint that picture.'	→	<b>Past Perfect</b> Ann said (that) she hadn't painted that picture.
<b>Past Perfect</b> Ann: 'I hadn't painted before.'	→	<b>Past Perfect</b> Ann said (that) she hadn't painted before.
<b>can/can't</b> Ann: 'I can paint.'	→	<b>could/couldn't</b> Ann said (that) she could paint.
<b>will/won't</b> Ann: 'I won't paint anymore.'	→	<b>would/wouldn't</b> Ann said (that) she wouldn't paint anymore.
<b>am/is/are going to</b> Ann: 'I'm going to paint.'	→	<b>was/were going to</b> Ann said (that) she was going to paint.

- time expressions and words referring to places (depending on the context):

*now* → *at that time/then*

*today* → *that day*

*yesterday* → *the day before*

*two hours ago* → *two hours earlier/before*

*tomorrow* → *the following day*

*here* → *there*

- demonstrative pronouns, personal pronouns, object pronouns and possessive adjectives (depending on the context):

*this/these* → *that/those*

*I/we* → *he/she/they*

*me/us* → *him/her/them*

*my* → *his/her*

*our* → *their*

#### 1 Report the statements.

- 'I've never heard of this artist,' said Susan.  
Susan said \_\_\_\_.
- 'Dad, I'm meeting Ann tomorrow,' said Helen.  
Helen told \_\_\_\_.
- 'Yesterday someone painted some graffiti in my street,' said Olga.  
Olga said \_\_\_\_.
- 'I can sell you some of my pictures,' Paul said to me.  
Paul told \_\_\_\_.
- 'My wife doesn't collect paintings,' said George.  
George said \_\_\_\_.
- 'You cannot take photos here,' the guard told me.  
The guard said \_\_\_\_.

#### 2 Report what John and Amanda said. Choose the correct verb and complete the sentences.

- Journalist:** In your opinion, who is the most talented British painter?  
**John:** Of course, I'm the most talented painter in the UK.  
John *claimed / added* \_\_\_\_.
- Teacher:** Are you interested in the arts?  
**Amanda:** I like opera. And I like modern art too.  
Amanda said \_\_\_\_ and she *added / replied* \_\_\_\_.
- Nancy:** You've lived here for about a year now, haven't you?  
**John:** No, we moved here in 2010.  
John *told / explained* \_\_\_\_.
- Wendy:** Will your parents let you go to the club?  
**Amanda:** No, my parents will never let me go to the club.  
Amanda *replied / suggested* \_\_\_\_.
- John:** Someone has made a mistake.  
**Tina:** Let me check it.  
John *pointed out / replied* \_\_\_\_.

## 7.5 Reported Speech – questions and imperatives

### Questions

To report questions, we use the verb *ask* and make the same changes as in reported statements (tenses, pronouns, time expressions, words referring to places, etc.).

The word order in reported questions is the same as in affirmative sentences (the subject comes before the verb).

When we report *yes / no* questions, we use *if* or *whether*:

*'Has Darina answered all the questions?'* → Jan asked me **if/whether** Darina had answered all the questions.

*'Do you often watch television?'* → I asked her **if/whether** she often watched television.

When we report *wh-* questions, we keep the question word (e.g. *what, who, how, where, when*):

*'How old are you?'* → The policeman asked the boy **how old** he was.

*'When did John and Mary split up?'* → Sam asked us **when** John and Mary had split up.

### Imperatives

To report imperatives, we use the verbs *ask* or *tell*, an object and (not) to + infinitive:

*'Please stop talking!'* → The director **asked us to stop** talking.

*'Don't take any photos of me!'* → Darina **told the reporter not to take** any photos of her.

#### 1 Complete the reported questions and imperatives with the correct pronouns.

- 1 'Has your cousin directed a film before?' Sue asked Tom. \_\_\_\_\_ asked \_\_\_\_\_ whether \_\_\_\_\_ cousin had directed a film before.
- 2 'Switch on your tablets,' Miss Smith asked her students. \_\_\_\_\_ asked \_\_\_\_\_ to switch on \_\_\_\_\_ tablets.
- 3 'What are you doing with my DVDs?' Jake asked Mary. \_\_\_\_\_ asked \_\_\_\_\_ what \_\_\_\_\_ was doing with \_\_\_\_\_ DVDs.
- 4 'Don't use your mobile phones in class!' the teacher told us. The teacher asked \_\_\_\_\_ not to use \_\_\_\_\_ mobile phones in class.
- 5 'Where did you first meet your best friend?' Ann asked me. \_\_\_\_\_ asked \_\_\_\_\_ where \_\_\_\_\_ had first met \_\_\_\_\_ best friend.
- 6 'Join us!' Jake and Ron told us. \_\_\_\_\_ told \_\_\_\_\_ to join \_\_\_\_\_.

#### 2 Report the questions.

- 1 'Are you interested in art?' the teacher asked Jack. The teacher asked \_\_\_\_\_ in art.
- 2 'How often does your boss update his Facebook profile?' Jen asked me. Jen asked \_\_\_\_\_ Facebook profile.
- 3 'Are you going to see this film again?' Jim asked Ann. Jim asked \_\_\_\_\_ again.
- 4 'Will you give us an autograph?' the boys asked the actress. The boys asked \_\_\_\_\_ an autograph.
- 5 'When did you lose your mobile phone?' Nick asked Eve. Nick asked \_\_\_\_\_ her mobile phone.
- 6 'Has Paula painted all these pictures herself?' I asked Olga. I asked \_\_\_\_\_ herself.

#### 3 Report the imperatives.

- 1 'Please, close the window,' the teacher said to Sara. The teacher asked \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 'Don't interrupt me!' she told John. She told \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 'Don't be late for lunch again, Helen,' said Dad. Dad asked \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 'Stop watching television and do your homework!' my mum said to me. My mum told \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 'Please, come in and wait for me in the living room,' Gary told us. Gary asked \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 'Don't ask me about my ex-husband again,' the film star told the journalist. The film star told \_\_\_\_\_.

# GRAMMAR FOCUS

## 8.2 The Passive

We use the Passive when we are more interested in the action itself than the 'doer' (the agent) of the action:

The bank **has been robbed** three times.

However, if we want to mention the agent, we need to use the word **by**:

The bank **was robbed by** three men.

We form the passive with an appropriate form of the verb to be and the past participle form of the main verb:

The robbers **will be arrested** soon.

The robbers **have been arrested**.

The robbers **were arrested** last night.

**Present Simple** Too many crimes **are committed** every year.

**Present Continuous** Tony **is being questioned** by the police.

**Past Simple** When **was** the money **stolen**?

**Past Continuous** The police station **was** still **being built** in 2005.

**Present Perfect** A homeless shelter **has** just **been opened** in my town.

**Past Perfect** Someone told me I **had been seen** at the crime scene.

**will** He **will be sentenced** to at least ten years in prison.

### 1 Rewrite the sentences in the Passive. Use an agent only if necessary.

- 1 Somebody has stolen my bicycle.
- 2 Somebody will clean the office later.
- 3 The police are using a new computer system to investigate crimes.
- 4 People destroyed twenty books at the city library last month.
- 5 Journalists were asking a lot of questions.
- 6 We have sold ten silver rings today.
- 7 Somebody found a wallet full of money yesterday.
- 8 Students at our school will remember Miss Jenkins, the head teacher.

### 2 Complete the sentences with the correct active or passive form of the verbs in brackets.

- 1 a We didn't know anything about the results of the new project because we \_\_\_\_\_ (not inform) about it.  
b Our boss didn't know anything about the results of the new project because we \_\_\_\_\_ (not inform) him.
- 2 a I \_\_\_\_\_ (follow) him. I'm right behind him.  
b I \_\_\_\_\_ (follow). They're right behind me.
- 3 a I regularly \_\_\_\_\_ (donate) money to this charity.  
b How much money \_\_\_\_\_ (donate) to this charity every year?

### 3 Complete the sentences with the correct passive form of the verbs in the box.

elect employ exclude find  
investigate offer organise raise

- 1 A new president \_\_\_\_\_ at the moment.
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ the case still \_\_\_\_\_ by the police officers two days ago?
- 3 Amy \_\_\_\_\_ just \_\_\_\_\_ as the manager of the local animal shelter.
- 4 How often \_\_\_\_\_ the charity bake sale \_\_\_\_\_ at your school?
- 5 Tim told us he \_\_\_\_\_ a job as a prison psychologist two days before.
- 6 When \_\_\_\_\_ Peter \_\_\_\_\_ from school?
- 7 I don't think the stolen painting \_\_\_\_\_ very soon.
- 8 How much money \_\_\_\_\_ for charity since last month?

## 8.5 have something done

We use **have + object + past participle** to talk about things that we don't do ourselves but arrange for someone else (usually a professional) to do for us.

**Present Simple** I **have my house cleaned** every Friday.  
(by a professional cleaner)

**Present Continuous** Are you **having the locks changed**?  
(by a locksmith)

**Past Simple** We **had the kitchen painted**.  
(by a professional painter)

**Past Continuous** Last week Jack **was having his bathroom remodelled**.

**Present Perfect** They **have just had a pool installed** in the garden.

**will** When **will** Helen **have the paintings hung** in her flat?

**be going to** When **are** you **going to have** a garage **built**?

We can use **get** instead of **have**:

We **will get/have** our living room **redecorated** next spring.

We **had/got** new windows **fitted** last year.

### 1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of have.

- Last weekend I \_\_\_\_\_ my bike repaired, so I couldn't go for a bike ride.
- A: \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ your wedding organised?  
B: Yes, we are. We're too busy to do it on our own.
- Aunt Sophie is eighty years old and she doesn't cook any more. She \_\_\_\_\_ her meals delivered every day.
- The windows look really shiny! \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ them cleaned recently?
- A: Where did you buy your new wooden furniture?  
B: I \_\_\_\_\_ it designed and made by a carpenter.
- Hi, Sandra. Sorry, can I call you back later? I \_\_\_\_\_ my hair cut at the moment.

### 2 Will and Bill are neighbours. Complete the sentences about Will using **have something done**.

- Bill cuts his grass twice a week.  
Will \_\_\_\_\_ twice a week.
- After the storm last week Bill repaired his roof.  
After the storm last week Will \_\_\_\_\_.
- Bill is going to change his locks because of burglaries in the area.  
Will \_\_\_\_\_ because of burglaries in the area.
- At 10 a.m. Bill was painting his garden wall.  
At 10 a.m. Will \_\_\_\_\_.
- Bill has just planted some apple trees.  
Will \_\_\_\_\_.
- Bill is building a tree house for his children.  
Will \_\_\_\_\_ for his children.

### 3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets. Use **have something done** where necessary.

- Susan is a hairdresser. She \_\_\_\_\_ (cut/people's hair) for money.
  - I'm afraid you can't see Joan yet. She's in her room with her hairdresser – she \_\_\_\_\_ (style/her hair).
  - When I was a little kid, I once \_\_\_\_\_ (cut/my hair) myself.
- Excuse me, could you \_\_\_\_\_ (take/a photo) of us, please?
  - I need to \_\_\_\_\_ (take/a photo) for my new passport.
  - You have to pay €10 if you want to \_\_\_\_\_ (take/photos) inside the museum.
- I'm using public transport this week because my car is at the mechanic's. I \_\_\_\_\_ (it/repair).
  - Tom's a mechanic. He \_\_\_\_\_ (repair/cars).
  - We can \_\_\_\_\_ (repair/your car) at our garage. Here are our prices.